DESIGN AND OPTIMUM OPERATION OF A RE-CONFIGURABLE PLANAR GOUGH-STEWART MACHINING PLATFORM

by

Lukas Johannes du Plessis

A dissertation submitted in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of

Philosophiae Doctor (Mechanical Engineering)

in the

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology, University of Pretoria

December 2001
Dedicated to my family

and in memory of

“Oom Nap & Tannie Lalie Esterhuizen”
ABSTRACT

DESIGN AND OPTIMUM OPERATION OF A RE-CONFIGURABLE PLANAR GOUGH-STEWARD MACHINING PLATFORM

by

Lukas Johannes du Plessis

Promoter: Professor J.A. Snyman
Department of Mechanical and Aeronautical Engineering

Degree: Philosophiae Doctor (Mechanical Engineering)

Keywords: Gough-Stewart platform, re-configurable machine tool, adjustable geometry, inverse kinematics, inverse dynamic analysis, trajectory-planning, cubic spline interpolation, mathematical optimization, constrained optimization problem.

This study presents a computer operating system for a novel re-configurable planar Gough-Stewart machining platform. The operating system is tested on a physically constructed test-model of the proposed re-configurable platform. In doing so, the proposed concept of a re-configurable planar machine tool, consisting of a moving platform connected to a fixed base via three linear actuators is validated, both from a theoretical and practical point of view.

The computer operating system consists of four sections:

1. Simulation: A computer program for simulating the motion of a planar Gough-Stewart platform was developed. This was done by applying the basic principles of Newton-Euler dynamics to a mechanical model of the platform. In particular, this special purpose simulation program allows for the inverse dynamic analysis of a planar Gough-Stewart platform so as to give closed-form expressions for the required actuator forces necessary for the execution of a specified trajectory. As a prerequisite for the inverse dynamic analysis, the special purpose program that was developed, also performs the inverse kinematic analysis of the mechanism by solving closed-form expressions for the positions, velocities and accelerations of the individual bodies comprising the machine.

2. Trajectory-planning: A new path-planning interpolation algorithm has been developed with which a user may specify the desired path to be followed by any planar industrial robot, and therefore in particular also the planar Gough-Stewart platform. Given prescribed kinematical requirements and
specified points along the path, a cubic spline interpolation curve is fitted in the time-domain, and further user-specified information is used to determine how the end-effector orientation angle should vary along the specified curve. This trajectory-planning algorithm is combined with the above-mentioned inverse dynamic simulation program to determine and monitor the required actuator forces as the planar Gough-Stewart platform traces the prescribed trajectory.

3. **Optimization**: With the ability to determine the required actuator forces at any instant along any prescribed path, an adjustable geometry planar Gough-Stewart machining platform becomes a viable option. The rationale is that the simulation of the mechanism allows for the off-line optimization of the operational geometry of the mechanism for the prescribed path. The single criterion objective function used is the minimization of the “maximum magnitude actuator force” identified via the above-mentioned dynamic simulation. The minimization of this objective function with respect to the variable geometry, ensures that singular configurations are avoided as the specified path is traced. The minimization of the objective function is further subjected to compliance with formulated inequality constraints that ensures mechanical feasibility as the constrained optimization problem is solved.

Once the optimum operational geometry is determined, the physical re-configurable planar Gough-Stewart platform can be adjusted accordingly to ensure the successful execution of the desired trajectory. If it is not possible to trace the prescribed path, then user intervention is required. This may be done in a rational manner since the specific numerical optimization algorithm used here (LFOPC), gives a best compromised solution if no feasible design exists for the specified trajectory.

The importance of this compromised solution is that it points out which constraints are violated and to what extent. This provides information for determining a piece-wise execution strategy by means of which the complete task may be performed, both feasibly and optimally.

4. **Control**: Apart from optimizing the Gough-Stewart platform configuration for a given task, the computer operating system also generates the necessary commands for controlling the required variation of the actuator leg lengths. This allowed for the physical execution of a number of representative prescribed machining paths.
SAMEVATTING

ONTWERP EN OPTIMALE WERKING VAN 'n
HERKONFIGUREERBARE VLAK GOUGH-STEWART-
MASJINERINGSPLATFORM

deur

Lukas Johannes du Plessis

Promotor: Professor J.A. Snyman
Department Meganiese en Lugvaartkundige Ingenieurswese

Graadbenaming: Philosophiae Doctor (Meganiese Ingenieurswese)

Sleutelwoorde: Gough-Stewart platform, herkonfigureerbare masjienwerktyg, verstelbare geometrie, terugwaartse kinematika, terugwaartse dinamiese analyse, kubiese lat-interpolasie, wiskundige optimering, begrensde optimeringsprobleem.

Hierdie studie handel oor 'n rekenaarbedryfstelsel vir die inwerkingstelling van 'n unieke herkonfigureerbare vlak Gough-Stewart-masjineringsplatform. Die bedryfstelsel is getoets met behulp van 'n toetsmodel van die voorgestelde herkonfigureerbare platform, wat spesiaal vir die doel ontwerp en gebou is. Sodoende is die uitvoerbaarheid van die voorgestelde konsep van 'n herkonfigureerbare vlak masjienwerktyg bevestig, beide vanuit 'n teoretiese en praktiese oogpunt. Die herkonfigureerbare vlak Gough-Stewart-masjineringsplatform waarna verwys word, bestaan uit 'n bewegende platform wat deur middel van drie lineêre aktueerders aan 'n vaste basis gekoppel is.

Die rekenaarbedryfstelsel bestaan uit vier dele:

1. **Simulasie**: 'n Rekenaarprogram is geskryf om die beweging van 'n vlak, Gough-Stewart-platform na te boots. Dit is gedoen deur die basiese beginsels van Newton-Euler-dinamika toe te pas op 'n meganiese model van die platform. Hierdie doelgerigte en toegewyde simulatiesprogram stel 'n mens in staat om die terugwaartse dinamiese analise van 'n vlak Goug-Stewart-platform ekonomies te doen. Dit behels die gebruik van geslote-vorm wiskundige uitdrukkings waardeur die onbekende aktueerderkragte tydens die uitvoering van die voorgeskrewe baan bereken kan word. As deel van die terugwaartse dinamiese analise voer hierdie spesiale rekenaarprogram ook die terugwaartse kinematische analise uit deur gebruik te maak van geslote-vorm uitdrukkings vir die posisies, snelhede en versnellings van die individuele liggame waaruit die masjien bestaan.
2. **Trajekbeplanning**: 'n Nuwe interpolerende *trajekbeplannings*-algoritme is ontwikkel waarmee die gebruiker die verlangde baan, wat deur enige *vlak* industriële robot en gevolglik ook die vlak Gough-Stewart-platform gevolg moet word, analities kan spesifiseer. Met sekere voorgeskeure kinematiese vereistes bekend, asook die gespesifiseerde node-punte langs die baan, pas die trajekbeplannings-algoritme interpolerende kubiese latfunksies in die tyddomein. Verdere insette van die gebruiker is egter nodig om te bepaal hoe die orientasie-hoek van die mekanisme se beheerde eindwerktuig moet varieer langs die voorgeskrewe baan. Ten einde die aktueerderkragte langs verskillende voorgeskrewe bane te bereken, is die trajekbeplannings-algoritme gekombineer met bogenoemde terugwaartse dinamiese analyse van die vlak Gough-Stewart-masjineringsplatform.

3. **Optimering**: Die lewensvatbaarheid van 'n vlak Gough-Stewart-platform met 'n *verstelbare geometrie*, lê daarin opgesluit dat dit moontlik is om die onbekende aktueerderkragte langs enige voorgeskrewe baan en op enige gegewe tydstip te bereken. Die rekenaarsimulasie van die mekanisme stel 'n mens in staat stel om die werkingsgeometrie van die mekanisme te *optimeer* na gelang van die voorgeskrewe baan. Die enkelmaatstafdoelfunksie wat hiervoor gebruik word, is die minimering van die "maksimum-grootte-aktueerderkrag" wat via bogenoemde dinamiese rekenaarsimulasie geïdentifiseer word. Die minimering van hierdie doelfunksie, met betrekking tot die verstelbare geometrie, waarborg dat singuliere konfigurasies geassosieer met oneindige groot aktueerderkragte tydens die uitvoering van die voorgeskrewe baan, vermy word. Verder moet die minimering van hierdie doelfunksie uitgevoer word met inagning van geformuleerde ongelykheidsbegrensings. Sodoende word die meganiestheid uitvoerbaarheid van die berekende oplossing tot die *begrensde optimeringsprobleem*, verseker.

Sodra die optimale werkingsgeometrie bepaal is, word die fisiese herkonfigureerbare vlak Gough-Stewart-platform dienooreenkomstig verstel, ten einde die voorgeskrewe baan suksesvol uit te voer. Indien dit onmoontlik is om die voorgeskrewe baan te volg, moet die gebruikar 'n beredeneerde besluit maak. Die spesifieke numeriese optimerings-algoritme wat in hierdie studie gebruik word (LFOPC), bereken die beste moontlike kompromie-oplossing indien daar geen lewensvatbare ontwerp vir 'n voorgeskrewe baan bestaan nie. Die beste kompromie-oplossing dui aan watter ongelykheidsbegrensings oorsky is, en tot watter mate. Hierdie kompromie-oplossing is noodsaaklik om 'n beredeneerde besluit te maak aangaande die stuksgewyse uitvoering van die voorgeskrewe baan op 'n lewensvatbare en optimale wyse.

4. **Beheer**: Afgesien van die konfigurasie-optimering van die Gough-Stewart-platform na gelang van 'n gegewe taak, genereer die rekenaardryfstellings ook die beheerkode wat nodig is vir die verlangde variasie in aktueerderbeenlengtes. Gevolglik is 'n paar verteenwoordigende masjineringsbane fisies uitgevoer met behulp van die toetsmodel.
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I would like to express my deepest gratitude towards my promoter and mentor Prof. Jan Snyman for his guidance and input over the past five years. I consider it a great privilege and honor to have studied under such an excellent scientist and researcher.

This study was made possible through the financial support of the South African National Research Foundation, the University of Pretoria, the Department of Mechanical and Aeronautical Engineering at the University of Pretoria as well as my loving mother. A Mellon Foundation grant was also awarded. I am very grateful to everybody who was involved in arranging the necessary funding.

A very special acknowledgement goes to Mr. Hannes Smit of Deman CC for all the time and resources that he has contributed to getting the test-model running. I would also like to thank Mr. Wolfgang Kaizer and the staff of Jawo Engineering for the excellent job they did manufacturing the test-model.

The kind help of Mr. Mike Spalletta and his colleagues at the University of Pretoria Engineering Computer Center is greatly appreciated, as is the help of Mr. Waldemar Wandschneider, Mr. Fred Proctor (NIST), Mr. Will Shackleford (NIST), Mr. Alex Hay, Mr. Michael Hindley, Mr. Christiaan Erasmus and Mr. Johannes Jordaan.

My sincerest thanks to everybody else not mentioned here who contributed to the successful completion of this study.

Praise the Lord!
TABLE OF CONTENTS

ABSTRACT .................................................................................................................................................. I

SAMEVATTING .......................................................................................................................................... III

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS ............................................................................................................................ V

CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION: OVERVIEW OF GOUGH-STEWART PLATFORMS USED AS MACHINING CENTERS ................................................................................................................................. 1

1.1 INTRODUCTION ..................................................................................................................................... 1

1.2 HISTORY OF GOUGH-STEWART PLATFORMS ..................................................................................... 1

1.3 GOUGH-STEWART PLATFORMS AS MACHINING CENTERS ............................................................... 6

1.3.1 6-DOF Gough-Stewart machining platforms .................................................................................. 6

1.3.2 Planar Gough-Stewart machining platforms .................................................................................. 10

1.3.2.1 The "Smartcuts" planar Gough-Stewart platform ........................................................................ 10

1.3.2.2 The "Dyna-M" and "Honda HVS-5000" machine tools .............................................................. 13

1.4 THE RE-CONFIGURABLE CONCEPT .................................................................................................... 15

1.4.1 Modular Gough-Stewart platforms ............................................................................................... 16

1.4.2 Variable geometry Gough-Stewart platforms ............................................................................... 17

1.5 THE OPTIMUM DESIGN OF GOUGH-STEWART PLATFORMS .......................................................... 18

1.5.1 The analytical approach ................................................................................................................ 19

1.5.2 The numerical approach ................................................................................................................ 20

1.5.2.1 Genetic Algorithms ............................................................................................................... 20

1.5.2.2 The “Democrat” design methodology ..................................................................................... 23

1.5.2.2.1 Democrat: the cutting phase ............................................................................................. 23

1.5.2.2.2 Democrat: the refining phase ............................................................................................ 25

1.5.2.2.3 Democrat: Optimizing the “HFM2” 6-DOF Gough-Stewart platform design ................. 27

1.5.2.2.4 Democrat: Optimizing the “HDM1” 6-DOF Gough-Stewart platform design ................ 30

1.6 MOTIVATION FOR THE PRESENT STUDY ......................................................................................... 31

1.6.1 The concept of a re-configurable planar Gough-Stewart machining platform ..................................... 31

1.6.1.1 Mechanical feasibility .......................................................................................................... 31

1.6.1.2 Simulation of a planar Gough-Stewart platform ................................................................ 32

1.6.1.2.1 Inverse Dynamic simulation .......................................................................................... 32

1.6.1.2.2 Trajectory-planning ......................................................................................................... 33

1.6.1.3 Optimal adjustment of the variable geometry ...................................................................... 35

1.6.2 The concept verification: a re-configurable planar Gough-Stewart platform test-model .................. 36

CHAPTER 2 KINEMATIC AND KINETIC MODELING OF A PLANAR MACHINING CENTER ........39

2.1 INTRODUCTION ..................................................................................................................................... 39

2.2 RIGID BODY MODEL .......................................................................................................................... 41
2.3 KINEMATIC CONSTRAINT EQUATIONS .............................................................................................................. 44
  2.3.1 Revolute joints ........................................................................................................................................ 45
  2.3.2 Translational joints ............................................................................................................................... 46
  2.3.3 Simplified constraints ............................................................................................................................. 49

2.4 DRIVING CONSTRAINTS ........................................................................................................................................ 49
  2.4.1 Fixed workpiece ...................................................................................................................................... 50
  2.4.2 Fixed cutting tool .................................................................................................................................... 53

2.5 INVERSE KINEMATIC ANALYSIS ................................................................................................................... 55

2.6 KINETIC ANALYSIS ........................................................................................................................................... 62
  2.6.1 Planar equations of motion for a system of unconstrained bodies ........................................................... 62
  2.6.2 Planar equations of motion for a system of constrained bodies .................................................................. 63
  2.6.3 Constraint reaction forces ....................................................................................................................... 66
    2.6.3.1 Revolute joint ................................................................................................................................... 67
    2.6.3.2 Translational joint ............................................................................................................................ 69
  2.6.4 Vector of forces ......................................................................................................................................... 71
    2.6.4.1 Gravity .............................................................................................................................................. 71
    2.6.4.2 Single force ........................................................................................................................................ 72
      2.6.4.2.1 Fixed workpiece ......................................................................................................................... 73
      2.6.4.2.2 Fixed cutting tool ....................................................................................................................... 75
  2.6.5 Inverse dynamic analysis .......................................................................................................................... 77

2.7 VERIFICATION OF SPECIAL PURPOSE PROGRAM ............................................................................................. 81
  2.7.1 Jacobian matrix verification ..................................................................................................................... 81
  2.7.2 Inverse dynamic analysis verification ..................................................................................................... 83
  2.7.3 Fixed workpiece vs. fixed tool verification ............................................................................................. 84

CHAPTER 3 TRAJECTORY-PLANNING THROUGH INTERPOLATION BY OVERLAPPING CUBIC ARCS AND CUBIC SPLINES ................................................................................................................................... 90

3.1 BASIC INTERPOLATION PROBLEM IN TRAJECTORY PLANNING ........................................................................... 90
  3.1.1 Determination of time parametric intervals ............................................................................................. 91
    3.1.1.1 Determination of interpolating and overlapping cubic arcs ............................................................. 91
    3.1.1.2 Computation of total path length S ................................................................................................. 97
    3.1.1.3 Dependence of curve length on parameter t ...................................................................................... 98
  3.1.2 Cubic spline representations for X(t) and Y(t) .......................................................................................... 100

3.2 PRACTICAL PROBLEM OF DETERMINING DY/DX AT P_0 AND P_N ............................................................................ 102

3.3 SYNTHESIS OF MORE GENERAL CURVES ......................................................................................................... 107
  3.3.1 Linear segment with cubic blends ........................................................................................................... 107
  3.3.2 Treatment of constraint on acceleration ................................................................................................. 112
    3.3.2.1 Attainment of central speed v^* ..................................................................................................... 113
    3.3.2.2 Violation of maximum allowable acceleration ............................................................................... 114

3.4 INCORPORATION OF AN ORIENTATION ANGLE \phi .................................................................................... 117

3.5 TEST PROBLEMS ............................................................................................................................................. 121
  3.5.1 Parabolic test function ................................................................................................................................ 121
3.5.2 Spike test function ................................................................. 124
3.5.3 Circular test curve ............................................................ 126
3.5.4 Logarithmic spiral test curve ............................................. 130
3.5.5 Non-analytical test curve .................................................. 133

CHAPTER 4 THE DETERMINATION OF OPTIMUM PLATFORM GEOMETRIES FOR
PRESCRIBED MACHINING TASKS ..................................................... 138

4.1 INTRODUCTION ................................................................. 138
4.2 FORMULATION OF THE CONSTRAINED OPTIMIZATION PROBLEM .............................................. 139
4.2.1 Design variables describing the adjustable geometry of the planar Gough-Stewart platform machining center ................................................................. 139
4.2.2 Objective function used to optimize the planar machining center geometry ................................. 141
4.2.3 Constraints applicable on the planar machining center ................................................................. 142
4.3 EVALUATION OF THE CONSTRAINED OPTIMIZATION PROBLEM ............................................... 143
4.3.1 Evaluation of the objective function ................................................................. 143
4.3.2 Evaluation of the inequality constraints ................................................................. 147
4.4 SOLVING THE CONSTRAINED OPTIMIZATION PROBLEM ......................................................... 148
4.5 DISCUSSION OF OPTIMIZATION RESULTS ......................................................... 151

CHAPTER 5 DEMONSTRATION OF THE OPTIMUM EXECUTION OF REPRESENTATIVE
PRESCRIBED MACHINING PATHS ........................................................ 159

5.1 INTRODUCTION ................................................................. 159
5.2 PARABOLIC TOOL PATH ..................................................... 161
5.2.1 Nodal points and orientation angle ........................................ 161
5.2.2 Optimization results ................................................................. 162
5.2.3 Analysis of convergence to optimum .................................. 165
5.2.4 Execution of parabolic tool path ............................................ 169
5.3 SPIKE TOOL PATH .............................................................. 170
5.3.1 Nodal points and orientation angle ........................................ 170
5.3.2 Optimization results ................................................................. 171
5.3.3 Analysis of convergence to optimum .................................. 174
5.3.4 Execution of the spike tool path ............................................ 176
5.4 CIRCULAR TOOL PATH .......................................................... 178
5.4.1 Nodal points and orientation angle ........................................ 178
5.4.2 Optimization results ................................................................. 179
5.4.3 Analysis of convergence to optimum .................................. 181
5.4.4 Execution of the circular tool path ............................................ 185
5.5 SPIRAL TOOL PATH .............................................................. 186
5.5.1 Nodal points and orientation angle ........................................ 186
5.5.2 Optimization results ................................................................. 187
5.5.3 Analysis of convergence to optimum .................................. 189
APPENDIX D  PHYSICAL SPECIFICATION FOR SIMULATION AND OPERATIONAL CONSTRAINTS OF THE TEST-MODEL............................................................................................................ 243

D.1  INTRODUCTION........................................................................................................................................... 243
D.2  PHYSICAL SPECIFICATIONS FOR SIMULATION OF THE TEST-MODEL........................................................... 243
D.2.1  Operational geometry .......................................................................................................................... 244
D.2.2  Local coordinates.................................................................................................................................. 245
D.2.3  Gravitational and frictional external forces.......................................................................................... 246
D.3  SPECIFICATION OF THE PHYSICAL OPERATIONAL CONSTRAINTS OF THE TEST-MODEL................. 249
D.3.1  Inequality constraint specification for the prevention of mechanical interference............................. 249
D.3.2  Linearly adjustable revolute joints..................................................................................................... 252
D.3.3  Extreme motion constraints ............................................................................................................... 253
D.3.3.1  Upper frame boundary..................................................................................................................... 254
D.3.3.2  Lower frame boundary.................................................................................................................... 255
D.3.3.3  Left hand frame boundary............................................................................................................... 257
D.3.3.4  Right hand frame boundary............................................................................................................. 258
D.3.4  Revolute joint mechanical interference constraints ........................................................................... 259
D.3.4.1  Revolute joint C mechanical interference constraints .................................................................... 260
D.3.4.2  Revolute joint D mechanical interference constraints .................................................................... 264
D.3.4.3  Revolute joint E mechanical interference constraints .................................................................... 264
D.3.4.4  Revolute joint A mechanical interference....................................................................................... 265

REFERENCES .......................................................................................................................................................... 268

TABLE OF CONTENTS  xi
Chapter 1

1 Introduction: Overview of Gough-Stewart Platforms Used as Machining Centers

1.1 Introduction

The main objective of this study is to verify the feasibility, both from a theoretical and practical point of view, of a novel proposed concept of a re-configurable planar Gough-Stewart machining platform.

The selective literature presented in this chapter gives a brief overview of the history of Gough-Stewart platforms, and then focuses on the limited industrial application of this technology to machine tools. The potential of re-configuration is put into perspective, and the existing methods for optimizing the designs of Gough-Stewart platform machine tools are presented. In the concluding Section 1.6, the novel concept proposed in this study is motivated based on the literature survey presented in this chapter.

1.2 History of Gough-Stewart platforms

A robotic manipulator is a mechanical device for the remote handling of objects or materials. Broadly speaking, industrial robotic manipulators may be categorized as either serial manipulators or parallel manipulators.

A serial manipulator consists of a number of links connected one after the other in series. The most well known serial manipulator is in fact the human arm since it fulfills this requirement. Most industrial robotic manipulators in use today are serial manipulators [1, 2]. An explanation for this phenomenon is given in [2]: “As the science and technology of robotics originated with the spirit of developing mechanical systems which would carry out tasks normally ascribed to human beings, it is quite natural that the main thrust was towards using open-loop serial chains as robot manipulators. Such robot manipulators have the advantage of sweeping workspaces and dextrous maneuverability like the human arm, ...”. 
In spite of the many applications where serial manipulators are used with great success, researchers agree that these manipulators are not ideally suited to deliver high load carrying capacity, good dynamic performance or precise positioning [1, 2]. Many serial manipulators have a cantilever structure, which tends to bend under heavy load and therefore inhibits the manipulator’s load carrying capacity [2]. To address this problem, bulky links are used for certain applications, but this has a negative influence on the ratio of load capacity to manipulator mass [1].

The intuitive alternative for greater rigidity and superior positional capability is to have the end-effector linked to the base via several parallel-actuated chains as illustrated by two very practical examples in [2]:

- human beings use both arms in cooperation to handle heavy loads, and
- for precise work such as writing, three fingers actuated in parallel are used.

More formally, Merlet [1] defines a generalized parallel manipulator as a closed-loop kinematic chain whose end-effector is linked to the base by several independent chains.

Dasgupta and Mruthyunjaya [2] distinguish between two classifications of robot manipulators (serial vs. parallel) and (open-loop vs. closed-loop) and explain that although open-loop manipulators are always serial and parallel ones are always with closed loop(s), it is possible to have closed-loop manipulators which are serial in nature. As an example, they mention that a robot manipulator having single degree-of-freedom (DOF) closed-loop linkages in series is essentially a serial manipulator. They further point out that some robot manipulators have both open and closed kinematic loops and/or complicated series-parallel combinations of actuators, concluding that such manipulators are called hybrid manipulators, since they can be hybrid in the sense of both classifications.

A particularly important and famous subclass [2, 3] of generalized parallel manipulators is the so-called Gough-Stewart platforms. For the purposes of this study, a Gough-Stewart platform is defined as a parallel manipulator consisting of two platforms: a fixed platform (the base) and a moving platform. The moving platform is connected to the base by six prismatic joints acting in parallel to control the 6-DOF of the moving platform. Furthermore, all the fixed base joints and the moving platform support joints, respectively, lie in the same base and platform planes.

The first working prototype of such a parallel manipulator is the tire test machine of Gough and Whitehall [4] shown in Figure 1.1, and which was operational in 1954-1955 [5].
INTRODUCTION: OVERVIEW OF GOUGH-STEWART PLATFORMS USED AS MACHINING CENTERS

Figure 1.1: The tire test machine of Gough and Whitehall (after [5]).

It is however the classic 1965 paper of Stewart [5] that attracted research attention to the field of parallel manipulators [2]. The mechanism that Stewart proposed as a flight simulator is shown in Figure 1.2. It consists of a triangular platform supported by ball joints over three legs of adjustable lengths and adjustable angular altitudes. The three legs are connected to the ground through two-axis joints (see [2]).

Figure 1.2: Stewart’s proposed flight simulator (after [5]).

Note that this particular mechanism cannot be strictly categorized as a Gough-Stewart platform in the sense of the definition given above, because of its leg arrangement ("polar coordinate control leg..."
INTRODUCTION: OVERVIEW OF GOUGH-STEWART PLATFORMS USED AS MACHINING CENTERS

Stewart [5] points out that the moving platform may be controlled in any combination by six "motors" each having a "ground abutment". As a result of this, he describes the use of a "linear coordinate control leg system" (see Figures 15 and 20 in [5]), resulting in a Gough-Stewart platform consistent with the definition used here.

Stewart [5] comments that although his platform fitted with linear control leg systems is very similar to Gough’s mechanism, it was independently conceived, and therefore the current usage of the name Gough-Stewart platform to denote such a parallel manipulator.

Researchers agree that parallel manipulators in general evolved into a popular research topic only in the 1980’s [2, 6]. This happened after Hunt [7] realized the stiffness and precise positioning capabilities of parallel manipulators are distinct advantages over serial manipulators, and as such, potential applications of parallel manipulators should be studied in more detail [2].

The systematic study of parallel manipulators in general, and Gough-Stewart platforms in particular, revealed that many theoretical problems that are easily solved for serial manipulators are much more difficult to solve for parallel manipulators, and vice versa. According to Dasgupta and Mruthyunjaya [2], the generalized 6-DOF Gough-Stewart platform is the parallel manipulator in which the contrast with respect to serial manipulators is manifested in the most prominent manner, making it the most celebrated manipulator in the entire class.
INTRODUCTION: OVERVIEW OF GOUGH-STEWART PLATFORMS USED AS MACHINING CENTERS

One specific contrast is the limited workspace of a 6-DOF Gough-Stewart platform compared to the sweeping workspace and dextrous maneuverability of a 6-DOF serial manipulator. The Gough-Stewart platform designs of the 1980's made use of pair wise meeting of the legs on either or both the moving platform and the fixed base. However, researchers of this era soon realized that the coalescence of spherical joints severely restricts the mobility of the manipulator [2].

Based on the definition of Gough-Stewart platforms, the most general 6-DOF Gough-Stewart platform would have six distinct leg support joints on both the moving platform and fixed base planes (see Figure 1.4).

![Figure 1.4: Schematic representations of a general 6-DOF Gough-Stewart platform (after [2]).](image)

Over the past two decades, there has been an ever-increasing research interest in the field of parallel manipulators [1, 2]. In their recent review article, with an extensive list of more than 200 references, Dasgupta and Mruthyunjaya [2] present a state-of-the-art review of the literature on Gough-Stewart platforms with critical examination of solved and unsolved problems in various aspects of kinematics, dynamics and design. According to them, and with regard to Gough-Stewart platforms in particular, three of the main areas in which open problems exist are:

- dynamics and control,
- workspace and singularity analysis, and
- design.
More specifically, Dasgupta and Mruthyunjaya [2] state that there are very few works on the systematic design of Gough-Stewart platforms and emphasize the importance of further research in this direction for the enhancement and realization of the mechanism’s potential.

With reference to parallel manipulators in general, one of the concluding remarks in the Gough-Stewart platform review [2] is that the different nature of parallel manipulators, compared to their conventional serial counterparts, calls for unconventional strategies and novel concepts for analysis and design. This is in agreement with one of the main conclusions reached by Merlet [1] in his recent comprehensive book on parallel robots and in which more than 600 literature references are cited. He states that: “Among the open research fields are synthesis, design and optimal design”.

1.3 Gough-Stewart platforms as machining centers

1.3.1 6-DOF Gough-Stewart machining platforms

In reaction to Stewart’s paper [5], researchers immediately realized the potential application of Gough-Stewart platforms as machine tools. For instance, in the communications on Stewart’s article [5], Tindale presents an artistic impression of a “universal mill” based on the platform Stewart proposed as a flight simulator. In his accompanying description, Tindale explains that such a milling machine could be used to machine complicated shapes (such as propellers) with simple cutters. He adds that the economically viability of such a machine tool would require a period of expensive study and development.

In 1966 Lewis [8] also gave a very detailed description of how such a machine tool could be applied in practice. In spite of this, it was only 28 years later that “…two American machine tool companies, Giddings & Lewis and Ingersoll, surprised the world with the presentation of a new type of machine tool at the 1994 International Manufacturing Technology Show (IMTS) in Chicago”. This quotation is taken from Pritschow’s [9] presentation on “Research and development in the field of parallel kinematic systems in Europe” at the first “European-American Forum on Parallel Kinematic Machines: Theoretical Aspects and Industrial Requirements” that was held in Milan, Italy in 1998 [10].

The machine tools that were presented in Chicago in 1994 were the “Variax Hexacenter” by Giddings and Lewis [11] shown in Figure 1.5, and the “Octahedral Hexapod” machine tool from the Ingersoll Milling Machine Company [12] shown in Figure 1.6.
INTRODUCTION: OVERVIEW OF GOUGH-STEWART PLATFORMS USED AS MACHINING CENTERS

Figure 1.5: The “Variax Hexacenter”.

Gindy et al. [13] explain that the “Variax” structure consists of a triangulated arrangement of three pairs of crossed legs. The prismatic legs of the “Variax” are all based on a “simple ball screw design, each powered by a separate servomotor”. By inspection of the left hand photograph in Figure 1.5, the fixed base joints and the moving platform support joints all lie in the same base and moving platform planes. The additional cylinders that can be seen in the right hand photograph in Figure 1.5, are the three “counterbalance cylinders” that “support the weight of the upper platform so that the ball screws can perform the singular task of moving the machine” [13]. In spite of these additional cylinders, the “Variax Hexacenter” is categorized as a general Gough-Stewart platform.

Figure 1.6: The “Octahedral Hexapod” (after [12]).
INTRODUCTION: OVERVIEW OF GOUGH-STEWART PLATFORMS USED AS MACHINING CENTERS

From Figure 1.6 it is evident that the pairs of base joints (each pair consisting of three joints), of the "Octahedral Hexapod" lie in two separate parallel planes. The offset between the two parallel base planes appears to be very small compared to the overall size of the machine, which is reported to be approximately 5 m tall [12]. Visual inspection of the enlarged view on the right hand side of Figure 1.6 shows that the moving platform support joints all lie in the same plane. Hence, for the purposes of this overview, the "Octahedral Hexapod" may also be considered a general Gough-Stewart platform according to the definition given in Section 1.2.

Interestingly, both these Gough-Stewart platform machine tools were installed at research institutions shortly after their introduction. The Department of Mechanical Engineering and Operations Management at The University of Nottingham purchased the "Variax Hexacenter" as part of a four-year research initiative, and in doing so, was the first research establishment in Europe to acquire a parallel manipulator type machine tool [11]. The Ingersoll Milling Machine Company installed its "Octahedral Hexapod" at the American Department of Commerce, National Institute for Standards and Technology (NIST) in May 1995 [12].

By 1998 the respective research institutions concluded that:

- "The research into these machines (parallel manipulator machine tools) is in its early stages and much work is still required in their design, optimization and control" [11], and
- "Parallel kinematic machine tools continue to look promising, and yet some very interesting and difficult challenges remain" [12].

Apart from the above less than promising conclusions, the unveiling of these Gough-Stewart platform machine tools in 1994 triggered the search for new improved kinematic structures for machine tools [9].

*Conventional machine tools* are largely constructed as serial kinematic chains connecting the workpiece to the tool. By far the largest majority of machine tools are of the Cartesian type, with two or three linear slides arranged in a mutually perpendicular fashion [14] such that the lower axis carries the one above it [15]. Ziegert et al. [14] comment that this basic type of machine tool has been in widespread development and use for nearly 200 years. During that time, this machine configuration has become well understood and now represents a very mature technology. Continuous improvements in technology and manufacturing methods have led to the high levels of performance expected of "modern" machine tools.

In spite of the success of this technology, increasingly challenging requirements with regard to productivity, economy and flexibility in manufacturing increasingly revealed the limitations of conventional machine tools:

*Chapter 1*
• the machine structure is subject to bending loads, causing deformations,
• the structure of the machine requires large masses to be moved, and
• there is an accumulation of errors due to the in series arrangement of the axes [15].

Consequently, after the “surprise” unveiling in 1994, many joint research efforts and consortiums were formed by industry and universities worldwide, which were aimed specifically at applying parallel manipulators as machine tools [1, 9, 11, 12, 16]. In order to further stimulate the exchange of ideas and findings in this regard, a biannual international conference is organized for this research community. The first gathering was at the 1998 “European-American Forum on Parallel Kinematic Machines” mentioned earlier, and the second was the “Year 2000 Parallel Kinematic Machines International Conference”, held in Ann Arbor, Michigan USA [17].

With reference to 6-DOF Gough-Stewart platforms, the conclusive outcome of this intensified research effort is that there are limitations prohibiting their application as production machine tools [16]:
• the unfavorable ratio of manipulator size to manipulator workspace,
• limited dexterity and tilting angles (15° – 30°),
• inherent danger of strut collision, and
• singularities inside the workspace.

It is therefore no surprise that one of the more successful parallel manipulator type machine tools used by industry is not a Gough-Stewart platform. Instead it is a 3-DOF parallel manipulator with fixed leg lengths, and actuated base joints. The patented “Z’-head”, developed by DS Technologie GmbH (DST), is shown in Figure 1.7. It has two rotational DOF with tilting angles of ±40° within a 370 mm stroke length of the translational DOF. The maximum stroke length of the translational DOF is 670 mm [18].

Figure 1.7: The “Z’-head” (after [18]).

The “Z’-head” accommodates a motorized spindle that holds the cutting tool. It forms part of a five-axis hybrid machine tool [19], with the parallel manipulator head mounted on a two-axis Cartesian base.
This machine tool is marketed in the aerospace industry through the alliance formed by Cincinnati Machine and DS Technologie [18].

### 1.3.2 Planar Gough-Stewart machining platforms

#### 1.3.2.1 The “Smartcuts” planar Gough-Stewart platform

Dasgupta and Mruthyunjaya [2] also review the so-called “lower dimensional parallel manipulating structures” that are similar to the 6-DOF Gough-Stewart platform, in that they are also equipped with linear actuators. One such sub-class is the “planar 3-DOF parallel manipulator” schematically shown in Figure 1.8.

![Figure 1.8: Planar 3-DOF parallel manipulator (after [2]).](image)

The research relevance of this mechanism is evident from the respective overviews given in [1] and [2]. More specifically, the book by Duffy [20] presents the kinematic analysis of several planar parallel mechanisms. Many other authors have studied planar parallel mechanisms in a context of robotics. For instants, the inverse and direct kinematic problems have been solved [21, 22, 23, 24, 25], dynamic models have been developed [26], the singularities have been studied [27] and the kinematic design has been addressed [28, 29, 30].

For the purposes of this study a **planar 3-DOF Gough-Stewart platform** is considered a subclass of the (general) planar 3-DOF parallel manipulator shown in Figure 1.8. More specifically (and in correspondence with the Gough-Stewart platform definition given in Section 1.2), the revolute joints connecting the three linear actuator legs of the **planar 3-DOF Gough-Stewart platform** to the moving platform and base, respectively lie in the in the same base and moving platform lines.
Of particular importance with reference to this study, is that Satya et al. [31] have proposed a planar 3-DOF Gough-Stewart platform as an alternative to the “6-DOF Gough-Stewart platform” type machine tool in 1995. They also constructed a prototype 3-DOF platform as part of the “Smartcuts” research project of the University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign [32]. A schematic representation of the “Smartcuts” planar manipulator, showing its three DOF, is given in Figure 1.9.

Satya et al. [31] acknowledge that in order for a machine tool to perform any task, it should have five DOF (three orthogonal translations with rotations about two of these axes), and hence propose a hybrid serial-parallel scheme with two of the “Smartcuts” planar platforms (see Figure 1.10). The simultaneous control of both mechanisms shown in Figure 1.10 is required for five axis machining. In particular, if the spindle carrying the cutting tool is attached to one of the planar platforms, and the workpiece to the other, the two rotational DOF of the hybrid machine are about two orthogonal translational axes, both of which are also orthogonal to the third translational axis.
Besides the fact that a simplified Gough-Stewart platform is easier to analyze than the 6-DOF version, another noteworthy advantage of the suggested series-parallel hybrid approach over purely parallel schemes [33] is that the use of 3-DOF systems obviously results in simplified mechanical construction.

In spite of its promising features, the use of the “Smartcuts” planar Gough-Stewart platform is inhibited by two potential drawbacks: small workspace and insufficient lateral stiffness as discussed below.

- In another related paper, El-Khasawneh and Ferreira [34] determine the reachable workspace of a modified “Smartcuts” planar Gough-Stewart platform. This specific mechanism has the three “moving platform leg joints” in line, but not the “base leg joints”. Although it is not explicitly stated, from the results presented it is clear that the associated workspace of this planar parallel manipulator is very small compared to the physical size of the manipulator. In correspondence with the disadvantages of the 6-DOF Gough-Stewart platform (Section 1.3.1), an unfavorable ratio of manipulator size to manipulator workspace is considered a severe limitation for the practical application of the mechanism as a machine tool.

- Although a planar Gough-Stewart platform has as an inherent characteristic a good stiffness in the plane of motion, the lateral stiffness (perpendicular to the plane of motion of the moving platform) is in general dependent on the bending stiffness of the “beam-like” actuator legs. The problem is that a cantilever beam in general shows large deflections under a bending moment load [35], and hence insufficient lateral stiffness of the moving platform can be expected.
1.3.2.2 The “Dyna-M” and “Honda HVS-5000” machine tools

Both the above drawbacks associated with the “Smartcuts” platform have been addressed in the similarly designed “Dyna-M” [36] and “Honda HVS-5000” [37] planar parallel manipulator type machine tools. Both machines are hybrid 3-axis machine tools with the three orthogonal translations of a Cartesian coordinate system as the three axes of motion. More specifically, the “ram” [36] or “head” [37] of the machine tool is positioned in the xy-plane by a planar 2-DOF parallel manipulator consisting of two linear actuators, the respective stationary ends of which are connected to the base via two revolute joints, and the respective extendable ends of which are connected to each other and to the ram / head via fork-type revolute joint. The ram / head is a serial mechanism which moves in the z-direction, and carries the tool.

The xyz-translational workspace of the “Dyna-M” is reported to be 630 mm × 630 mm × 500 mm with the projected area of the machine 3 m × 6 m [36]. A three-dimensional schematic representation of the “Dyna-M”, and its associated workspace is shown on the left-hand side of Figure 1.11. The right-hand side of Figure 1.11 is a photograph of the “Dyna-M” prototype machine tool.

Figure 1.11: The “Dyna-M” (after [36]).

The “Dyna-M” shows a slight improvement in terms of the workspace to “projected machine area” relation over the 6-DOF Gough-Stewart platform type machine tools. For example, according to Tönshoff and Grendel [16], the 6-DOF “Ingersoll HOH-600” has a workspace cube in the xyz-Cartesian space of 600 mm × 600 mm × 800 mm, with a projected machine area of 6.7 m × 5.6 m.
Furthermore, once an angular tilt is specified for the moving platform, the associated workspace volume of the spatial Gough-Stewart platform decreases significantly. Researchers at the University of Nottingham specify the angular capabilities of the “Variax Hexacenter” in terms of cone angles, where the perpendicular axis to the moving platform is tilted from the vertical by a fixed angle but in any direction [38]. The “Variax Hexacenter” reportedly has a 5° angular capability within a 630 mm work cube [39]. However, the maximum angular tilt changes depending on the position within the workspace, and hence Whittingham et al. [39] express the need for additional analysis tools to define exactly what these angular limits of the machine are throughout the workspace. In this regard, Du Plessis and Snyman [40] have recently proposed a new numerical method for determining workspaces and their results, for both planar and spatial Gough-Stewart platforms, confirm the earlier statement about the decreasing workspace size associated with larger angular orientation specifications.

Evidently, the “Dyna-M” and the “Honda HVS-5000” machine tools are not affected by this orientation limitation, since they only have three translational DOF. Furthermore, Moriwaki [37] reports that the “Honda HVS-5000” has a more compact structure compared to the “Dyna-M”, which would further improve the workspace to “projected machine area” ratio.

In terms of the lateral stiffness of these machine tools, the ram / head is connected to the frame with two additional chain links. Each of these additional chain links consist of two pivoting bodies connected to both the base and ram / head via separate revolute joints. Figure 1.12 (a) shows an assembled view of the “Dyna-M” machine tool. Two isolated views of the “Dyna-M” ram as positioned by the two linear actuators, and supported laterally by the stabilizing chain links are shown for illustrative purposes in Figure 1.12 (b) and (c). The middle cylinder attached to the ram and shown in Figure 1.12 (b) and (c), is presumably a measuring device.

Figure 1.12: (a) The “Dyna-M”. (b) and (c) The “Dyna-M” ram as positioned by the two linear actuators and supported laterally by two stabilizing chain links (after [36]).
INTRODUCTION: OVERVIEW OF GOUGH-STEWART PLATFORMS USED AS MACHINING CENTERS

The minimum lateral stiffness of the “Dyna-M” prototype is 60 N/μm, which compares well with the minimum stiffness of 39.4 N/μm (2.25 × 10^3 lb/in) reported by El-Khasawneh and Ferreira [35] for the specific spatial Gough-Stewart platform they studied. Note that for a single leg of the latter mechanism, the stiffness in average is about 175 N/μm (1.0 × 10^6 lb/in). The minimum stiffness in the x- and y-directions of the “Dyna-M” is 30 N/μm, which is of course dependent on the linear stiffness of the two linear actuators.

It is of interest that the “Dyna-M” is a prototype 3-axis machine tool intended for application in the automotive industry. It is reported to have a maximum velocity of 90 m/min and a maximum acceleration of 15 m/s^2 in all three axes [36].

The “Honda HVS-5000” is presumably also a prototype, since it is intended to replace existing transfer machines in the automotive industry for the machining of automobile cylinder heads and cylinder blocks. The stabilizing links are made of aluminum, and it is also equipped with an automatic tool changer that requires only 0.5 s for a tool change. The positional accuracy of the HVS-5000 is 0.01 mm (10 μm), and the “accuracy of drilling is ±0.05 mm (±50 μm)” [37].

1.4 The re-configurable concept

Looking at machine tools from a different angle, the recent trend in manufacturing systems is re-configurability. Gopalakrishnan et al. [19] explain that “re-configurable machine tools” assembled from machine modules such as spindles, slides and worktables (see also [41]) are designed to be easily re-configured to accommodate new machining requirements”. They elaborate, stating that these systems are required in order to quickly respond to changes in market demand and the resulting product design changes. Furthermore, the essential characteristics of re-configurable machine tools are listed in [19] as modularity, flexibility, convertibility and cost effectiveness. Finally, Gopalakrishnan et al. state that “the goal of re-configurable machining systems, composed of re-configurable machine tools and other types of machines, is to provide exactly the capacity and functionality, exactly when needed”. According to Koren [42] a recent report of the US National Research Council (Visionary 2020) mentioned that adaptive re-configurable manufacturing is considered as first priority for future (manufacturing) systems. As a result 2001 saw the “CIRP 1st International Conference on Agile, Re-configurable Manufacturing” [42] as a communication forum for this important issue.

Researchers have come to realize that Gough-Stewart platforms in particular, have unique features allowing for re-configurability, thus making these manipulators applicable for consideration as re-
configurable machine tools. The two main approaches that have been proposed for the re-configuration of Gough-Stewart platforms are *modular design* and a *variable geometry*.

### 1.4.1 Modular Gough-Stewart platforms

The prototype re-configurable 6-DOF Gough-Stewart platform, of the Department of Mechanical Engineering at the New Jersey Institute of Technology [43, 44], is discussed here as an illustrative example. Its re-configuration is achieved through *modular design* such that any of the leg modules can be replaced with a different range of motion, and can be placed on the mobile platform and the base at any desired location and orientation.

A previous study by Ji [45] has shown that the *moving range* of the legs and the *placement* of the legs have a great effect on the *shape* and *size* of the workspace. Ji and Song [44] further comment that since the workspace of a Gough-Stewart platform is difficult to visualize, and usually *limited*, such a mechanism should be *re-configurable to allow for the specification of different task requirements*, especially the workspace requirement.

Given a set of legs, the Ji [43, 44] approach to re-configuration involves the determination of the position and orientation of joints on the mobile platform and the base for a specified task. When legs of different ranges are available, the re-configuration must also consider what combination of legs to use.

Ji and Leu [43] explain that they use a discretization procedure to determine the so-called foot-placement space for a given desired workspace of the mobile platform. The foot-placement space is a set of all base locations where the foot of the leg can be placed to ensure the required workspace. Here, having *chosen* the position of the leg joint on the moving platform, the motion limits of the upper spherical joint and the minimum and maximum leg length limits are also taken into consideration. If the resultant foot-placement space is the null space, then the desired workspace cannot be obtained no matter where the foot is placed. One then has to *choose* a different location for the leg joint on the moving platform, or use another leg of different range. The same process has to be applied to all six legs to obtain six foot placement spaces, one for each leg.

In essence, this is a trial-and-error methodology to re-configuration. Ji and Song [44] conclude by saying that the idea is to develop an inventory of standardized leg modules and customized mobile and base platforms, so that their modular Gough-Stewart platform can be custom-configured, portable and easy to repair.
1.4.2 Variable geometry Gough-Stewart platforms

In their 1993 layman evaluation of (Gough)-Stewart platforms for manufacturing, Fitzgerald and Lewis [46] recognized that a variable geometry base would improve the practical working volume of the manipulator "so singularities can be moved relative to the workpiece". They explain that one of the problems with a Gough-Stewart platform is that it can collapse and may not be able to recover under its own power when it loses control near singularities. Correspondingly, a "straight forward" solution is proposed: "Stay away from singularities, which effectively are regions of non-performance in the robot’s space. Predict where they will be and plan paths around them; many applications do not require operating near singularities, and more flexible applications will depend on routine generation of large path sequences that will require new, more intelligent path-planning methods."

At the time, Fitzgerald was the Program Coordinator, and Lewis the Technical Leader of the Advanced Controls and Sensors Group, Automation and Robotics Research Institute (ARRI). This research institute, which is affiliated with the University of Texas at Arlington, built a prototype Gough-Stewart platform with a variable base geometry. Figure 1.13 shows a photograph of this manipulator, from which it is clear that each of the three pairs of base joints are individually adjustable.

![Figure 1.13: Photograph of the ARRI-(variable geometry base) Gough-Stewart platform.](image)

The specially designed moving platform joints (gimbals) of the ARRI-Gough-Stewart platform are however not adjustable (see Figure 1.14).
Machine tools are continually being reprogrammed to move along different prescribed paths, implying that the corresponding workspace requirements of the machine tool is also continually changing. Therefore, a re-configurable Gough-Stewart platform type machine tool, where re-configuration is achieved via a variable geometry, may potentially overcome the workspace limitations that has been hindering its application as a machine tool. Experience with such adjustable tools will also contribute to the important research field of re-configurable manufacturing systems.

The potential improvement that the variable geometry capability could have on the practical working volume of Gough-Stewart platform type machine tools can, however, only be realized if its adjustable capability is combined with an efficient methodology for determining the optimum geometry for the machining task at hand. This observation follows simply from the fact that, if each leg joint can be adjusted separately and in a continuous manner, then infinitely many possible combinations exist. Thus if such a capability could be found it would be far superior to the trial-and-error selection method in situations where the task requirement varies.

### 1.5 The optimum design of Gough-Stewart platforms

Although to date re-configurable geometry Gough-Stewart platforms have not received much attention in literature, the related and extremely important subject of the optimum design of (fixed configuration) parallel manipulators has indeed been a very important issue.
Merlet [1] explains that the (optimal) design of a general parallel manipulator essentially is "the determination of the dimensions of the manipulator so that it complies as closely as possible with the performance needed for the task at hand".

Speaking in very broad terms, parallel manipulator research is conducted via two fundamentally different (but complementary) approaches, namely the analytical approach, and the numerical approach.

1.5.1 The analytical approach

In his review paper of the optimization of multi-DOF mechanisms, Chedmail [47], distinguishes between the analysis phase ("given a set of design variables of a mechanism, which is its mechanical behavior?") and the synthesis phase of a mechanism ("given an expected mechanical behavior of a mechanism, define its design variables").

By far the most popular choice when it comes to the analysis of parallel manipulators, the analytical approach would be to find an analytical relationship between any given set of design parameters, and the mechanical behavior of the manipulator. The two very recent reviews by Merlet [1] and Dasgupta and Mruthyunjaya [2] respectively, give comprehensive and detailed accounts of the work done to date in this regard.

Some of the very successful analytical results that were obtained are based on the "monumental theory of screws of Ball" [2] that was developed over a century ago. Dasgupta and Mruthyunjaya [2], explain that Ball’s theory of screws provides an elegant framework for the analytical representation and analysis of mechanical systems.

Merlet [1] should be credited, not only for presenting an extensive overview of the research done on parallel manipulators, but also for contributing towards the analytical approach for the analysis of these mechanisms.

The inverse of the analysis process is the synthesis (design) process, and indeed, if an analytical relationship – between any required performance criterion / criteria and the chosen design parameter(s) – exists, such that analytical closed-form mathematical equations may be formulated, then the optimum values of the design parameter(s) may be determined exactly and very efficiently, using algebraic methods. Unfortunately, it is a very challenging task in general to formulate such closed-form mathematical solutions. This may explain why the leading authority, Merlet [1], states that in spite of all the research that has been published in this field, there is still no answer to the question of determining the best parallel manipulator for realizing a given task.
1.5.2 The numerical approach

The use of (numerical) optimization techniques in mechanical engineering is becoming increasingly more popular, due to the sustained increase of computer power [47].

As far as the optimum design of structures is concerned, numerical techniques are currently in widespread use [48]. Chedmail [47] mentions, for example, that it is now possible to (numerically) optimize subsets of complex products such as the wings of an airplane, and hence conclude that (numerical) optimization is one of the possible approaches to mechanism synthesis.

Following the explanation given in [1], the typical layout of the numerical approach to the design and optimum design of parallel manipulators involves

- the selection of a specific mechanical architecture for the parallel manipulator (Gough-Stewart platform or any other type of general parallel manipulator), and
- the computer simulation of the specific architecture for determining the physical and geometrical characteristics (values of the design variables or parameters) of the mechanism that are best suited for the prescribed task. Two general techniques are listed for utilizing the simulation output:
  - the simulation output may be used directly by the user to select values of the design parameters via trial-and-error, or
  - the simulation output can be used to construct a cost-function, and one of several available numerical optimization techniques may be applied to determine the optimum values of the design variables through the minimization of the cost-function.

1.5.2.1 Genetic Algorithms

Due to the inherent characteristics (such as non-linearity, discontinuity and the presence of local minima) of typical cost-functions formulated for parallel manipulators, it is no surprise that numerical optimization using genetic algorithms is preferred by most researchers attempting to optimize a parallel manipulator design through the minimizing of a cost-function. Genetic algorithms are easy to program, and are able to take into account any type of variable (discrete or continuous) [47].

Typical of work done using a genetic algorithm in the optimal design of parallel manipulator machine tools is that of Zhang and Gosselin [49]. They optimized the “Tricept” machine tool with respect to its global stiffness, using a genetic algorithm, and explain that genetic algorithms are powerful and broadly applicable stochastic search and optimization techniques based on the evolutionary principle of natural chromosomes. The evolution of chromosomes due to the operation of crossover, mutation and natural
selection, is based on Darwin's survival-of-the-fittest principles, and is artificially simulated to constitute a robust search and optimization procedure.

The "Tricept" machine tool is a special type of parallel manipulator, although it has similarities to the Gough-Stewart platform, with prismatic actuators connecting the moving platform to the base. It is also equipped with a passive constraining leg between the moving platform and the base. The specific degrees of freedom of this type of parallel manipulator are determined by the specific degrees of freedom of the passive leg. In particular, the "Tricept" machine tool has three DOF (one translational and two rotational). The respective leg joints on the moving platform and the base coincide with the vertices of two respective equilateral triangles, one on the moving platform and one on the base. The radii of the respective circles circumscribing the respective equilateral triangles are referred to as the radius of the base platform ($R_b$), and the radius of the moving platform ($R_p$).

In order to obtain the maximum global stiffness of the "Tricept" machine tool, three architectural parameters are considered as optimization variables. They are $R_b$, $R_p$ and the height of the moving platform relative to the base ($z$). Zhang and Gosselin [49] comment that using these three parameters, it is very difficult obtain the analytical expressions for each of the six stiffness elements of the moving platform (also see Section 1.5.1). The six stiffness elements are related to the 6-DOF of a rigid body in three-dimensional space. They further comment that traditional numerical optimization methods can be expected to experience convergence problems when faced with these types of cost-functions they consider.

In searching for an optimal design, the feasible ranges of the three architectural parameters of the "Tricept" machine tool may be expressed as inequality constraints: $200 \leq R_p \leq 300$, $400 \leq R_b \leq 600$ and $900 \leq z \leq 1500$, where all extreme values are given in mm.

Fixing the two rotational DOF of the moving platform, Zhang and Gosselin [49] maximize the sum of the six stiffness elements, starting with an initial design given by: $R_p = 225$ mm, $R_b = 500$ mm and $z = 1300$ mm. The sum of the six stiffness elements for the initial design is 0.0078189. The optimal design found after 100 generations of the genetic algorithm, is given by $R_p = 300$ mm (maximum allowable), $R_b = 600$ mm (maximum allowable) and $z = 900$ mm (minimum allowable). The sum of the six stiffness elements of the optimal design is 0.0153369.

Zhang and Gosselin [49] thus improved the sum of the stiffness elements by a factor of 1.96 using a genetic algorithm. In practical terms their approach may be used not only for the optimal design of a
machine tool, but also for the optimum placement of the workpiece relative to the base. This placement is an important issue as explained by Chrisp and Gindy [38], who studied the component (workpiece) positioning for the “Variax Hexacenter”, mentioned in Section 1.3. Another recent paper on this subject is the one by Wang et al. [50].

Although the solution of the problem posed by Zhang and Gosselin [49] is an important achievement, the particular design optimization problem they considered is incomplete. In their problem the stiffness of the moving platform is optimized for a single position inside the workspace of the manipulator, and with the moving platform fixed at a specific orientation. Machine tools are, however, normally required to have good stiffness characteristics over the complete workspace.

Kirchner and Neugebauer [51] emphasize that a parallel manipulator machine tool cannot be optimized by considering a single performance criterion. Also using a genetic algorithm, they consider multiple design criteria, such as the “velocity relationship” between the moving platform and the actuator legs, the influence of actuator leg errors on the accuracy of the moving platform, actuator forces, stiffness as well as a singularity-free workspace. These specified design criteria are summarized into three discrete objectives (cost-functions) related to the Jacobian matrix of the manipulator:

- maximize the minimum singular value of the Jacobian matrix over the workspace,
- minimize the maximum singular value of the Jacobian matrix over the workspace, and
- maximize the inverse condition number over the workspace.

The size of the workspace, and the rotational capability of the moving platform inside the workspace are additional design criteria, i.e. the rectangular shaped workspace should be as large as possible, with a maximum rotational capability of the moving platform inside the workspace [51].

Kirchner and Neugebauer [51] use 13 architectural design parameters in the simulation of their six-DOF Gough-Stewart platform machine tool.

As an alternative to solving the optimization problem by formulating a weighted multi-criteria objective function, the so-called “Pareto optimal-region” is determined. The number of criteria in the multi-criteria objective function determines the dimension of the Pareto optimal region. If only two criteria are optimized for, the associated Pareto-optimal region should be a curve representing all the optimum designs, and showing how the respective criteria weigh up with one another [52]. Once the Pareto optimal region is determined, the user evaluates the individual criteria against each other, and selects a design based on the compromise reached between the different criteria [51].

Some specific disadvantages associated with the use of genetic algorithms are [47]:
• the stochastic exploration of the space of design variables is very expensive in terms of CPU time,
• it is necessary to experimentally predetermine the mutation and cross over parameters,
• there is no proof of convergence, and
• compared with a pure random approach, the gain is rarely greater than a factor of 5.

1.5.2.2 The “Democrat” design methodology

Merlet [1, 53] lists some disadvantages of the classical approach to optimizing a parallel manipulator design through the minimization of a cost-function:
• the weights given to the various criteria of a multi-criteria cost-function strongly influences the results that are obtained by numerical optimization procedure,
• a single criterion objective function, such as for example maximizing the workspace, does not always account for “hidden criteria” such as singularity considerations throughout the workspace,
• non-continuous cost-functions are difficult to handle for most numerical optimization techniques. In addition to this difficulty, the cost-function may have numerous local minima and consequently the minimization procedure may have difficulty to locate the global minima, and
• the computational time may be excessive if the evaluation of the cost-function requires computer simulations of the performance of the manipulator over the whole workspace. This is considered a serious drawback for most numerical optimization methods requiring frequent evaluations of the cost-function.

As an alternative to the cost-function approach, Merlet [1, 53] proposes the so-called “Democrat” design methodology for the optimum design of parallel manipulators, where a specified set of performance requirements are considered to determine the optimum design.

This design methodology is based on the concept of the parameter space, where each dimension of this space represents a design parameter of the parallel manipulator. It works in two phases: during the cutting phase different analytical design criteria are mapped as criterion regions in the parameter space. The subset of all the criterion regions in the parameter space where all specified criteria are satisfied, is isolated and referred to as the search region. Finally, during the refining phase, the search space is sampled at regular intervals for evaluation against the specified set of performance requirements, to obtain the optimum parallel manipulator design(s).

1.5.2.2.1 Democrat: the cutting phase

For a general parallel manipulator with six in-parallel links, and under the assumptions made in [1] and [53], six architectural parameters represent the positions of the respective six leg joints on the base, relative to the base coordinate frame. An additional six architectural parameters represent the respective
positions of the six leg joints on the moving platform, relative to the moving platform coordinate frame. These twelve parameters are in fact radii of twelve circles, six of which are centered at the base coordinate frame, and six of which are centered at the moving platform coordinate frame. The respective heights, and respective orientation angles of the moving platform and base joints are assumed to be known relative to the respective coordinate frames. The twelve architectural parameters specified result in a twelve-dimensional parameter space.

The following two criterion regions are considered in [1]:

- The prescribed workspace criterion is associated with known minimum and maximum values of the respective actuator legs. The user defines line segments inside the prescribed workspace for the moving platform to trace with a specified fixed orientation. The "workspace criterion region" in the twelve dimensional parameter space indicates all the allowable designs of the parallel manipulator, i.e. all the designs that would allow the parallel manipulator to follow the prescribed line segments without violating the extreme leg lengths.

At any time instant, each of the six leg lengths only depend on the position and orientation of the moving platform along the specified line segment, and the respective positions of the two leg joints (moving platform and base) of that specific leg. Hence, the twelve dimensional parameter space is decomposed into six different parameter planes. For a "circular" 6-DOF Gough-Stewart platform with the respective moving platform and base joints spaced at known angular intervals on two circles, the twelve dimensional parameter space reduces to a single parameter plane, since the respective radii of the two circles are the only two architectural parameters needed to describe the design of the manipulator.

The analytical workspace criterion that Merlet [1] formulates, allows him to trace the "workspace criterion region" in the parameter plane in approximately 500 ms. Furthermore, for the 6-DOF "circular" Gough-Stewart platform described above, Merlet [54] shows that interferences between the actuator links may easily be included in the analytical workspace criterion.

- The second criterion considered by Merlet [1] deals with constraints on articular velocities of the in-parallel links of the parallel manipulator. Here, the requirement is that a specified point on the moving platform be able to reach a specified velocity (speed and direction), at all locations in the desired workspace, without the articular velocities violating the allowable extreme values. The desired workspace is again approximated by a set of line segments, and the parameter space is again decomposed into parameter planes.
The analytical "articular velocities criterion" is used to trace the "articular velocities criterion region" in the parameter plane in typically 2.5 s. Merlet [1] points out that this region is not necessarily closed. Hence mapping the "articular velocities criterion region" requires the specification of the maximum values on both parameters of each parameter plane.

In [53] Merlet reports that the mapping of each criterion region can be as quick as 100 ms, or can take a few minutes, depending on the number of line segments analyzed inside the workspace.

In each parameter plane, the two-dimensional search region is then isolated as the intersection of the "workspace criterion region" and the "articular velocities criterion region". For the general parallel manipulator considered by Merlet [1, 53], the six two-dimensional search regions constitute the twelve dimensional search region. Six points, one in each two-dimensional search region, are required to define a unique geometry. For the 6-DOF "circular" Gough-Stewart platform, there is only a single two-dimensional search region, and any point in this search region defines a unique geometry that satisfies both the workspace and articular velocities design criteria. Some user interaction is required to isolate the search region [53].

1.5.2.2.2 Democrat: the refining phase
Once all the feasible geometrical designs are isolated, the fully automated [53] refining phase discretizes the search region, and compares each feasible design based on a set of performance criteria deemed necessary for that application, in search for the optimal design.

A high-level computer language was developed for the evaluation of specific parallel manipulator performance criteria in a modular fashion. As an example, Merlet [1] shows that the absence of singularities inside the prescribed workspace, monitoring of positioning errors, as well as stiffness consideration may readily be incorporated as performance criteria. The high-level computer language also allows for the evaluation of any cost-function that would normally be defined for a numerical optimization procedure.

Note that the performance criteria are evaluated for all positions of the moving platform in the specified volume – the "translation workspace" [53]. The evaluation is done without discretizing the translational workspace because of the ability of the high-level computer language to treat specific types of "translational workspaces". In particular, the translational workspace can be a normal cube, or it can have a complex shape (see Figure 1.15), in which case it will be defined by a set of two-dimensional cross-sections in three-dimensional Cartesian space.
INTRODUCTION: OVERVIEW OF GOUGH-STEWART PLATFORMS USED AS MACHINING CENTERS

Figure 1.15: An example of a translational workspace volume that can be treated by the algorithms in Democrat (after [53]).

The volume can also be specified in the high-level computer language as a prescribed "hypercube" in the "articulated space". The number of articulated parallel links of a parallel manipulator determines the number of dimensions of the articulated space. For a 6-DOF Gough-Stewart platform with six arbitrary spaced actuating legs, a six dimensional "articulated space" is required to define the "hypercube" $\ell_i^{\text{min}} \leq \ell_i \leq \ell_i^{\text{max}}, \ i = 1,2,...,6$; with $\ell_i^{\text{min}}$ and $\ell_i^{\text{max}}$ respectively the minimum and maximum allowable leg lengths of legs $i = 1,2,...,6$.

Merlet [53] distinguishes between a translation workspace as described above, and a general workspace which, apart from the specified Cartesian volume, also includes specified ranges for the three orientation angles of the moving platform. In the latter case, the high-level computer language "continuously" evaluates the performance criteria for the specified three-dimensional displacement volume, but the "three-dimensional orientation volume" is discretized during the evaluation process.

As a specific example of how the high-level computer language works, Merlet [53] explains the instruction:

\[
\%\text{VO} = \text{minimal stiffness in cube center} \ 0 \ 0 \ 30, \ 0 \ 10 \ 10 \ 10
\]

This instruction commands the computation of the "minimal values of the diagonal of the stiffness matrix of the parallel manipulator" for all positions of the moving platform in the specified cubic volume $(10 \times 10 \times 10)$, centered at $(x, y, z) = (0,0,30)$. The returned minimal values are stored in the array VO.

The user specifies allowable minimal values as the "stiffness performance requirement", which is then used in the evaluation of the different feasible designs given by the discretized search region. In particular, the high-level computer language returns "0" if the feasible design does not fulfill the user's
INTRODUCTION: OVERVIEW OF GOUGH-STEWART PLATFORMS USED AS MACHINING CENTERS

requirement, “1” if it fulfills the requirement and “2” if it fulfills the requirement and is better than the previous solution [53].

It is reported that the computational time of this final stage of the proposed design methodology is dependent on the size (and dimension) of the search region, and the efficiency with which the performance criteria is evaluated [1].

1.5.2.2.3 Democrat: Optimizing the “HFM2” 6-DOF Gough-Stewart platform design

The “HFM2” 6-DOF “circular” Gough-Stewart platform “meant to be used for fine motions of heavy loads (850 kg) in a relatively small workspace”, is presented in [1] and [53] as a case study for the “Democrat” design methodology.

![Diagram](image)

Figure 1.16: Rectangle (scale 1:1) showing the x and z workspace constraints of the “HFM2” [1] 6-DOF “circular” Gough-Stewart platform.

Figure 1.16 shows a rectangle in the x – z plane, where the position of the coordinate system is chosen to represent the x and z workspace “constraints” as given Merlet [1, 53] for the HFM2 manipulator:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>x (mm)</th>
<th>y (mm)</th>
<th>z (mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>±30</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>±20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The remaining workspace constraints listed for the HFM2 platform are

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$\theta_x$ (mrad)</th>
<th>$\theta_y$ (mrad)</th>
<th>$\theta_z$ (mrad)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>±5</td>
<td>±5</td>
<td>0 – 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

which may be interpreted as follows:

The three respective orientation angles of the moving platform, $\theta_x$, $\theta_y$, and $\theta_z$, are required to assume all values in the respective ranges $[(-0.2865') – (0.2865')]$, $[(-0.2865') – (0.2865')]$ and
[(0°) - (0.573°)], at any point inside the rectangle shown in Figure 1.16. Such a workspace, where positional and rotational requirements are specified, is formally known as a dextrous workspace [40].

Other than the workspace constraints, Merlet [1, 53] specifies positional and accuracy requirements, the most stringent of which are ±0.01 mm positioning accuracy in the x-direction, and ±0.05 mrad (±0.00286°) rotation accuracy about the z-axis (θz). Optimization of the manipulator should be done firstly with regard to maximizing the “rotational stiffness” about the z-axis, and secondly with regard to maximizing the “positional stiffness” in the x-direction.

One of the issues in determining the optimum design of the manipulator is, of course to determine the position of the prescribed dextrous workspace and manipulator base relative to each other. This “base / required workspace”-position introduces additional parameters to the two “leg joint position” parameters that are required for describing the design of the 6-DOF “circular” Gough-Stewart platform. They should also be considered during the optimization procedure.

Merlet [1, 53] does not mention this “base / required workspace” position as such, but in requiring the use of linear actuators with known and fixed stroke lengths, he indirectly addresses the positioning problem by determining a minimum actuator leg length for all six actuator legs. In essence, for any specified “base / required workspace”-position, the “base / actual workspace”-position may be adjusted, until it coincides with the “base / required workspace”-position. In practice this adjustment is made possible in one of two ways:
• extensions may be added to the lower ends of all six actuators to lengthen the minimum actuator leg length of all six actuators, and hence lifting the “base / actual workspace” (see the illustrative 2-DOF example in Figure 1.17), or

![Diagram of workspace and actuator configuration](image)

**Figure 1.17:** The adjustment of the base / actual workspace position by lengthening the minimum actuator lengths.
• shortening the minimum actuator leg length of all six actuators by mounting the actuator leg base joint at the required location along the casing of, for example, a hydraulic actuator (see the illustrative 2-DOF example in Figure 1.18).

![Figure 1.18: The adjustment of the base/actual workspace position by shortening the minimum actuator lengths.](image)

For the “HFM2” manipulator, Merlet [1, 53] defines 19 line segments to analytically represent the prescribed dextrous workspace, and then calculates the “area of the search region” as a function of the “minimum actuator leg length”. This is presumably done by choosing different “minimum actuator leg length” values, and calculating the corresponding “area of the search region” value. This being the case, the discrete data points could be represented on a graph, either by connecting them using straight-lines, or by fitting an approximation polynomial through them [55].

With the best value of the “minimum actuator leg length” (750 mm) determined through a “systematic search” involving “various trials” in the domain plotted (590 mm – 835 mm), Merlet [1, 53] finally shows the associated search plane from which the optimum HFM2 “circular” Gough-Stewart platform is to be determined, using the high-level computer language algorithm. Merlet [1, 53] comments that the optimum manipulator geometry in terms of the “rotational stiffness” about the z-axis, is to be fitted with sensors capable of a ± 2 µm accuracy in order to comply with the specified manipulator accuracy.

Without giving specific parameter values or reporting on the computational effort, a photograph of the prototype “HFM2” manipulator that was built according to the optimum design parameters, is shown in [53]. Merlet [53] reports that the repeatability of the prototype under a load of 230 kg is estimated to be better than 0.1 µm, and that 10 other prototypes have subsequently been built.
1.5.2.2.4 Democrat: Optimizing the "HDM1" 6-DOF Gough-Stewart platform design

In a second example, which has a similarly small dextrous workspace requirement (see Figure 1.19), and exactly the same accuracy requirements as before, Merlet [1] attempts to optimize another "circular" Gough-Stewart platform ("HDM1"), firstly in terms of the "rotational stiffness" about the z-axis, and secondly in terms of the positional stiffness in the x-direction. As additional constraints, the respective radii of the base and moving platforms are also limited.

For this case study, Merlet [1, 53] considers the "rotational stiffness" about the z-axis, as a function of two additional design parameters: the angle between two adjacent joint centers on the moving platform, and the angle between two adjacent joint centers on the base. Note that for the 6-DOF "circular" Gough-Stewart platform, the three pairs of adjacent joints on the moving platform, as well as the three pairs of adjacent joints on the base, are equally spaced at 120° angular intervals. The minimum limits imposed on the respective angles are 10° for the angle between two adjacent joint centers on the base, and 20° for the angle between two adjacent joint centers on the moving platform.

Subject to the above constraints, different values of the two angles are iteratively chosen [53]. For each choice of angles, Merlet [1]:

- determines a best value for the minimum actuator leg length, which is associated with a maximal possible "rotational stiffness" in the z-direction for the manipulator in its nominal position (the six linear actuator legs in the middle of their respective ranges),
- calculates the associated search plane, and
INTRODUCTION: OVERVIEW OF GOUGH-STEWART PLATFORMS USED AS MACHINING CENTERS

• utilizes a special “procedure” in the high-level computer language, to discretize and analyze the search plane, in search of a manipulator design with which the required specified accuracies may be obtained with the least stringent sensor accuracy.

No information is given regarding the number of different choices of angle-pairs evaluated. Furthermore, without giving any specific parameter values or reporting on the computational effort, Merlet [1] comments that the two best solutions, in terms of least stringent sensor accuracies, are 2.4 μm and 2.79 μm respectively.

As a conclusion to the discussion of the Democrat design methodology, some of its reported advantages and disadvantages are listed here. Merlet [1, 53] points to the advantageous modularity and versatility with which the high-level computer language can evaluate almost any type of performance requirement. Furthermore, although the reduction of the parameter space into a search region is considered as an advantage in limiting the required computational time, the constraints imposed on the criterion regions (Section 1.5.2.2.1) and consequently also on search region, admittedly, limit the number of feasible designs when searching for an optimum parallel manipulator design.

1.6 Motivation for the present study

In conclusion to, and as part of the literature review presented here, the concept of a novel re-configurable planar Gough-Stewart machining platform will now be motivated. In doing so the scope of the present study will also be outlined.

1.6.1 The concept of a re-configurable planar Gough-Stewart machining platform

1.6.1.1 Mechanical feasibility

Although to date the concept of a re-configurable planar Gough-Stewart machine has not been satisfactorily demonstrated, researchers have recently shown an increased interest in such re-configurable platforms. This renewed interest is stimulated by the desire to overcome the workspace and singularity limitations (see Section 1.4), which have been inhibiting the practical application of conventional Gough-Stewart platforms as machine tools. The case studies presented by Merlet [1, 53] reconfirm the fact that the conventional 6-DOF Gough-Stewart platforms have very small usable workspaces (see Figure 1.16 and Figure 1.19).
The simplified mechanical construction of the planar 3-DOF Gough-Stewart platform (see Figure 1.9) to be studied here, makes it well suited for the implementation of re-configuration. This is so because its variable geometry allows for the easy adjustment of the relative positions of the base and moving platform revolute joints as shown in Appendix D.

Furthermore, the existing “Dyna-M” and “Honda HVS-5000” machine tools (Section 1.3.2) prove that a planar parallel manipulator can be constructed in such a way that sufficient lateral stiffness is provided for hybrid serial-parallel machining operations.

The above indicates that the successful implementation of a planar re-configurable platform as a machine tool is not so much limited by its mechanical design, but rather by the availability of a suitable operating system. Here the operating system should ensure that any reasonably specified trajectory is feasible and can accurately be followed. In particular, the operating system should be able to a priori simulate the motion of the mechanism along the prescribed trajectory. Based on the simulation the system should be capable of deciding on the necessary adjustments of the variable geometry so that the prescribed trajectory can accurately and optimally be followed. The first part of the current study is therefore the development of a reliable and efficient dynamic simulation module for the “overall operating system”.

1.6.1.2 Simulation of a planar Gough-Stewart platform

1.6.1.2.1 Inverse Dynamic simulation

Shamblin and Wiens [56] characterize the dynamics of two 6-DOF Gough-Stewart machining platforms for which they derive the equations of motion with inclusion of the strut masses. They state that in order to capture dynamics (i.e. determine the actuator forces), a motion trajectory must be specified, along which the mechanism’s dynamical behavior is simulated. Accordingly Chapter 2 of this study shows how the inverse dynamic analysis of a planar Gough-Stewart platform may be performed so as to give closed-form expressions for the required actuator forces necessary for the execution of a specified trajectory. This inverse dynamic analysis is specifically developed for implementation on a computer in near real time, hence the need for closed-form mathematical solutions to the forces at discrete and appropriately chosen time instants along the path.

The advantage of the inverse dynamic analysis is that for different adjustable parameter values, which give rise to different mechanism geometries and different relative positions of the prescribed trajectory, the corresponding motions may be analyzed and compared with each other.

The output of the inverse dynamic analysis is a set of actuator forces at discrete time instants. The usefulness of this information lies in the fact that if the prescribed trajectory is positioned such that the
simulation shows that the Gough-Stewart platform will move through or near a \textit{singular configuration} in tracing the trajectory, then this will be evident from the \textit{near infinitely large actuator forces} in the simulation output at certain time instants. By comparing the discrete computed actuator forces at the discrete time instants for any specific prescribed trajectory, the computer simulation can be utilized to isolate the "maximum magnitude actuator force" for the \textit{specific positioning} of the prescribed trajectory and the given mechanism \textit{geometry}. This information can in turn be utilized to \textit{determine} an appropriate relative \textit{positioning} for the prescribed trajectory, as well as an appropriate mechanism \textit{geometry}, such that a large "maximum magnitude actuator force" resulting from passing through or near a singular configuration, may be avoided.

In their related investigation, Shamblin and Wiens [56] specify a trajectory to "simulate a chamfering and deburring operation along the edge of a workpiece as well as to show the dominant forces under a variety of conditions". It follows that a further function to be performed by the operating system being developed here, is that of \textit{kinematic trajectory-planning}. This subject will be dealt with in the next subsection.

\textbf{1.6.1.2.2 Trajectory-planning}

Many researchers have studied trajectory-planning from the point of view that, given an initial and final pose of the manipulator end-effector, it is required to \textit{determine} how the manipulator should be actuated in between these two poses (see for instance [57]). With specific reference to Gough-Stewart platforms, this approach is popular, since it allows for the \textit{avoidance of singularities inside the workspace} of the manipulator [58]. To avoid singularities, Merlet [59] proposes a trajectory verifier and indicates analytically which part of the specified trajectory is outside the reachable workspace of the parallel manipulator, and whether the specified trajectory will lead to a singular configuration. The application of this trajectory verifier is limited to a 6-DOF Gough-Stewart platform, although it is claimed to be easily extendable to general parallel manipulators.

\textit{Trajectory-planning} as defined by Wolovich [60] is the specification of desired time-dependent paths in either Cartesian or link space. In terms of performing the \textit{inverse dynamic analysis} of a planar machining platform, the tool trajectory must be specified in Cartesian space. The inertia forces in the dynamic analysis of the motion of a machine are of course dependent on the manner in which the Cartesian path is specified in the \textit{time domain} [56]. If the trajectory is specified in such a way that the resulting accelerations are discontinuous, then the inertia forces will also be discontinuous.

With specific reference to trajectory-planning for existing Computer Numerical Control (CNC) machine tools, Zhang and Greenway [61] state that CNC systems typically only support motion along straight-line and circular paths. However, \textit{free-form} design and machining have become important in a variety of
applications in the automotive-, aerospace-, and ship building industries. Specific examples are the
design and machining of dies and molds, as well as propeller and impeller blades [62]. The consensus
seems to be that free-form surfaces can easily be modeled in 3-D space, but that the manufacturing of
free-form surfaces has been a difficulty up to now.

The difference between various representation schemes with which free-form surfaces are modeled in 3-
D space, lies in the utilization of different geometrical and polynomial properties required to control and
modify the desired geometrical shapes [62]. More specifically, Non-Uniform Rational B-Splines
(NURBS) have long been favored in Computer-Aided Design (CAD) systems, since “they offer exact
uniform representation of both analytical and free-form parametric curves” [61].

Bahr et al. [62] explain that a typical way to machine parts with spline surfaces (including NURBS) on a
CNC machine tool is converting or transforming the surfaces to linear or circular segments according to
a prescribed error tolerance, so that the CNC machines can reproduce the parts. For many applications,
these conversions or transformations will produce a large amount of data. Furthermore, with the path
divided into straight-line segments, in current five-axis machining with off-line programming, the tool
orientation is maintained constant during each segment. This implies that the orientation of the tool
must be changed abruptly between two segments, which according to Kim et al. [63] can produce an
unpredictable reaction at the point of contact with the surface and prevent a smooth finish.

Kim et al. [63] acknowledge the value of a real-time NURBS curve interpolator for a 6-axis robot
developed by Zhang and Greenway [61]. They state that real-time parametric interpolators reduce the
memory requirement and communication load in guaranteeing continuity in the first-order and second-
order properties of the tool position. They emphasize however, that the most significant problem in the
generation and control of a five-axis NC trajectory is a continuous and smooth description of the tool
orientation that will change smoothly along the contour surface. Therefore, an important area of
research is to generate a control algorithm that will accommodate a continuous and sufficiently smooth
description of the orientation of the tool.

Kim et al. [63] focus on the fact that the tool tip and a unit line vector attached to the tool generate a
ruled surface. The curvature theory of a ruled surface, which is a study of the differential motion of the
ruled surface, is then used to provide the properties of the tool motion in a strictly mathematical manner.
When the surface to be machined is a free-formed surface and cannot be represented by an analytical
closed-form equation, Kim et al. [63] use the Ferguson curve model to geometrically represent the ruled
surfaces for the tool trajectory.
In Chapter 3, an alternative trajectory-planning interpolation algorithm is proposed and developed with which a user may specify the desired path to be followed by any planar industrial robot, and therefore in particular also by a planar Gough-Stewart platform. Given specified points along the path, an interpolation curve is fitted in such a way that continuous displacement, velocity and acceleration curves are generated in the time-domain. The user-specified information is also used to determine how the end-effector orientation angle should vary along the specified curve, and in particular, generates continuous orientation angle, orientation angular velocity and orientation angular acceleration time curves.

In terms of the current research, which is focused on a planar Gough-Stewart machining platform, the relevance of the proposed free-form trajectory-planning algorithm lies in the fact this machine tool is ideally suited to machine along non-linear curves. Powell et al. [11] explain that for a conventional machine tool, based on serial kinematic chains, the simplest movements are linear motions along the orthogonal axes (x, y and z). To provide more complex motion requires the synchronized movement of all three of the axes. With the Gough-Stewart platform type machine tools, all motion is derived from the simultaneous motion of all the actuator legs, hence the moving platform orientation can also be varied in a continuous manner.

Of particular importance here, with reference to the machining problems previously experienced and outlined above, is that the algorithm proposed in this study allows for the generation of a kinematically smooth trajectory. The resulting beneficial effect is that the inertia forces in the actuators, as well as the orientation of the tool will vary in a continuous manner. This should ensure smooth finishing during the machining operation.

It should be noted here that for the actual motion of the physical machine tool to correspond with its simulated motion, the proposed trajectory-planning algorithm can not simply be loaded on a conventional CNC controller. In fact, Kim et al. [63] explain that the implementation of any extended algorithm that allows for interpolated motion beyond straight lines and circles, requires an open architecture controller, which is considered a new concept in CNC machining. Although this practical aspect is very important, it falls beyond the scope of this study. However, the ability to accurately simulate the continuous kinematics and associated dynamical behavior of the motion of the planar Gough-Stewart platform along non-trivial prescribed paths, is imperative in determining the optimum mechanism geometry for any prescribed path.

1.6.1.3 Optimal adjustment of the variable geometry

With reference to Sections 1.5.2.1 and 1.5.2.2, Merlet [1, 53] and Kirchner and Neugebauer [51] agree that a single performance objective criterion cannot be used to optimize a Gough-Stewart machining
INTRODUCTION: OVERVIEW OF GOUGH-STEWART PLATFORMS USED AS MACHINING CENTER

platform. In particular, Merlet [1, 53] points out that there are “hidden criteria” such as singularity considerations that are not considered when, for example, the workspace is maximized.

In spite of the above reservations, a single criterion cost-function will nevertheless be used in this study to determine an appropriate relative positioning for the prescribed trajectory, as well as an appropriate planar Gough-Stewart platform geometry for different machining tasks. In particular, the cost-function to be minimized here will be the “maximum magnitude actuator force” mentioned in Section 1.6.1.2.1. The rationale is that if the “maximum magnitude actuator force” is as small as possible, the corresponding relative positioning for the prescribed trajectory and the particular mechanism geometry will be such that the prescribed trajectory will successfully be traced. This will be so since the planar manipulator will be “as far as possible” from any singular configurations.

Many numerical optimization techniques also allow for non-trivial inequality and equality constraints to be specified. The careful formulation of such constraints extends the value of the solutions to the corresponding constrained optimization problems, beyond that where only simple limitations are imposed on the minimum and maximum allowable design variable (parameter) values. For example, the minimum and maximum allowable actuator leg lengths of a planar Gough-Stewart platform may be incorporated as inequality constraints, to ensure that the design parameters are adjusted so that the prescribed trajectory lies inside the mechanism’s workspace.

In Chapter 4 it will be shown that, in spite of the non-smooth nature of the “maximum magnitude actuator force” cost-function and “actuator leg length” inequality constraints, the gradient-based mathematical programming LFOPC optimization algorithm [64] used in this study, successfully solves the comprehensively constrained optimization problem. Indeed, LFOPC has in the past been successfully applied to many engineering optimization problems where noise and discontinuities were present in the objective and constraint functions [64].

1.6.2 The concept verification: a re-configurable planar Gough-Stewart platform test-model

In Chapter 5 the ultimate task of designing, constructing and putting into operation a re-configurable planar Gough-Stewart platform test-model is tackled. The chapter shows in particular how the simulation and optimization processes are integrated in an operating system, that allows for the set-up of the machine and the execution of the prescribed tasks.

The constructed test-model may be seen as a technology demonstrator rather than a prototype. The value of this demonstrator lies in the fact that it enables a practical assessment of the feasibility and potential of
the re-configurable device, and associated operating system, as a practical machining center. This evaluation is presented in the concluding Chapter 6, in which suggestions for future research are also made.
2 KINEMATIC AND KINETIC MODELING OF A PLANAR Machining CENTER

2.1 Introduction

The books by Nikravesh [65] and Haug [66] emphasize the importance of the application of computer-aided analysis techniques to multi-body mechanical systems. This section gives a brief overview of the more important aspects of computer-aided analysis of mechanical systems as highlighted in the introductory chapter of the book by Nikravesh [65].

A mechanical system is defined as a collection of bodies (or links) in which some or all of the bodies can move relative to each other. Furthermore, mechanical systems may range from the very simple to the very complex, and a specific mechanical system may experience either planar (two-dimensional) or spatial (three-dimensional) motion.

Any mechanical system can be represented schematically as a multi-body system where the actual shape or outline of a body may not be of immediate concern in the process of analysis. Of primary importance though, are the connectivity of the joints and the physical characteristics of the elements in the system.

The analysis of a mechanical system is an important tool in the design process, i.e. the process of determining which physical characteristics are necessary for a mechanical system to perform a prescribed task. Figure 2.1 shows a block diagram of the “analysis branch” called mechanics, which is the study of motion, time and forces.
There are two approaches to mechanics: the **graphical approach** and the **analytical approach**. Many classical methods of analysis in mechanics have relied upon graphical and often quite complicated techniques. These techniques are based on geometrical interpretations of the system under consideration. Contrary, the method of solution by vector algebra is an analytical approach, and is more **systematic** when compared to the graphical approach. A problem formulated analytically can be solved repeatedly for different parameter values, a task that is ideally suited to a computer program. The usefulness of writing a computer program becomes even more apparent when the mechanical system under consideration is complex to the extent that, if the system is considered for kinematic analysis, a graphical approach would be very tedious as well as inaccurate.

The purpose of computer-aided analysis of mechanical systems is to develop basic methods for computer formulation and solution of the equations of motion. This requires systematic techniques for formulating the equations and numerical methods for solving them. A computer program for the analysis of mechanical systems can either be a **special-purpose** program or a **general-purpose** program.

A special-purpose program is a rigidly structured computer code that deals with only one type of application. The equations of motion for that particular application are derived a priori and then formulated into the program. As input to the program, the user can provide information such as the dimensions and physical characteristics of each part. Such a program can be made computationally efficient and its storage requirement can be minimized, with the result that it will be suitable for implementation on small personal computers. The major drawback of a special-purpose program is its lack of flexibility for handling other types of applications.
Since the primary interest here is the dynamic analysis of a specific machining center, a special-purpose program is required. The systematic formulation of the relevant equations as applied to the planar machining center, is dealt with in Sections 2.2 – 2.6. The special-purpose computer program that resulted, is tested in Section 2.7.

2.2 Rigid body model

Machining centers are used to control the relative motion between a workpiece and a cutting tool such that the workpiece is shaped into a desired component. The planar machining center under consideration consists of a planar Gough-Stewart platform with which either the tool or the workpiece can be moved and orientated in the plane.

More specifically, the planar Gough-Stewart platform consists of a moving platform connected to a fixed base via three linear actuators as shown in Figure 2.2. Changes in the actuator lengths result in changes in the position and orientation of the moving platform. This planar Gough-Stewart platform corresponds exactly to the simplified planar Stewart platform studied by Haug et al. [67].

![Figure 2.2: Planar Gough-Stewart platform.](image)

A rigid body model is used for analysis purposes of the planar Gough-Stewart platform. Per definition a rigid body is a system of particles for which the distances between particles remain unchanged. Since all solid materials change shape to some extent when forces are applied to them, the concept of rigidity is only acceptable if the movement associated with the changes in shape is small compared with the overall movement of the body. In general this requirement is more than satisfied for most machining centers.

In order to specify the state of the planar Gough-Stewart platform, it is first necessary to define coordinates that specify the location and orientation of each body in the mechanism. Consider the illustrative example shown in Figure 2.3. The Oxy-coordinate system shown in Figure 2.3 is the global
reference frame, and a body-fixed $0, \xi, \eta$-coordinate system is embedded in body $i$. This implies that the position and orientation of body $i$ can be specified in the plane by the position vector $\vec{r}_i$, and the angle of rotation $\phi_i$ of the body-fixed $0, \xi, \eta$-coordinate system relative to the global coordinate system. The angle $\phi_i$ is considered positive if the rotation from positive x-axis to positive $\xi_i$-axis is counterclockwise (CCW).

![Figure 2.3: Locating point P relative to the body-fixed and global coordinate systems (after [65]).](image)

A fixed point $P_i$ on body $i$ can be located from the origin of the $0, \xi, \eta$-axes by the vector $\vec{s}_{iP}$. The body-fixed point $P_i$ can also be located from the origin of the global $0xy$-reference frame by vector $\vec{r}_{iP}$.

In general body $i$ is not fixed, and therefore the physical vectors $\vec{r}_i$, $\vec{r}_{iP}$ and $\vec{s}_{iP}$ are time varying vectors. Hence, the vector representations $\vec{r}_i$ and $\vec{r}_{iP}$ of vectors $\vec{r}_i$ and $\vec{r}_{iP}$ have components that vary with time $t$ when represented in the global $0xy$-reference frame, i.e.

$$\vec{r}_i : \vec{r}_i = \begin{bmatrix} x(t) \\ y(t) \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \vec{r}_{iP} : \vec{r}_{iP} = \begin{bmatrix} x^P(t) \\ y^P(t) \end{bmatrix}$$

Vector $\vec{s}_{iP}$ has fixed components when represented in the local $0, \xi, \eta$-reference frame, since point $P_i$ is fixed in body $i$:

$$\vec{s}_{iP} : \vec{s}_{iP} = \begin{bmatrix} \xi_i^P \\ \eta_i^P \end{bmatrix}$$

The superscript prime $'$ indicates that the relevant vector is represented in the local coordinate system. It follows that vector $\vec{s}_{iP}$ represented in the global $0xy$-reference frame has time varying components indicated by $s_{iP}$. Figure 2.4 shows the geometrical relationship that exists between the global representation $s_{iP}$, and the local representation $s_{iP}'$ of vector $\vec{s}_{iP}$.
Figure 2.4: Translation between the local and global vector representations.

It follows directly from Figure 2.4 that

\[ s_i^p = \begin{bmatrix} x_i^p \\ y_i^p \end{bmatrix}, \quad \begin{bmatrix} \xi_i^p \\ \eta_i^p \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \phi_i & -\sin \phi_i \\ \sin \phi_i & \cos \phi_i \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \xi_i^p \\ \eta_i^p \end{bmatrix} \] (2.1)

or more concisely

\[ s_i^p = A_i s_i^p, \quad A_i = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \phi_i & -\sin \phi_i \\ \sin \phi_i & \cos \phi_i \end{bmatrix} \]

Furthermore, with reference to Figure 2.3:

\[ r_i^p = r_i + s_i^p = r_i + A_i s_i^p \]

In summary, it is noted that the position and orientation of body \( i \) may be represented in the x-y plane by the three-vector representation \( q_i \), consisting of the global components of vector \( r_i \) and the orientation angle \( \phi_i \), i.e.

\[ q_i = [r_i^T, \phi_i]^T = [x_i, y_i, \phi_i]^T \] (2.2)

The three components of \( q_i \) are called the planar coordinates of body \( i \). It follows that for a system of \( b \) bodies situated in the x-y plane, the vector of coordinates for the \( b \) bodies is a 3b-vector given by

\[ q = [q_1^T, q_2^T, ..., q_b^T]^T \] (2.3)

Since the planar Gough-Stewart platform consists of eight bodies (see Figure 2.5), the coordinate vector of the entire mechanical system is a 24-vector, i.e.

\[ q = [q_1^T, q_2^T, ..., q_8^T]^T = [x_1, y_1, \phi_1, x_2, y_2, \phi_2, ..., x_8, y_8, \phi_8]^T \] (2.4)

where corresponding to Nikravesh [65], \( q \) without a subscript denotes the vector of coordinates for the entire system.
2.3 Kinematic constraint equations

In accordance with the definition of Nikravesh [65], the eight individual bodies that collectively form the planar Gough-Stewart platform shown in Figure 2.5, are called links. The combination of two links in contact constitutes a kinematic pair, or joint. An assemblage of interconnected links is called a kinematic chain. A mechanism is formed when at least one of the links of the kinematic chain is held fixed and any of its other links can move. The fixed link of the planar Gough-Stewart platform (link 8 in Figure 2.5) is the ground or frame. Note that the origin of link 8 is chosen to coincide with the origin of the global 0xy-reference frame, and that the local 0₈ξ₈η₈-coordinate system, and the global 0xy-reference frame are identically orientated. Furthermore, the origin of each local 0ᵢξᵢηᵢ-coordinate system, i = 1,2,...,7, is chosen to coincide with the center of mass of respective bodies 1,2,...,7, and these local coordinate systems are orientated as shown in Figure 2.5.

The primary purpose of the above schematic representation of the planar Gough-Stewart platform is to identify the connectivity of the bodies or links, i.e. to identify the kinematic pairs or joints. A kinematic pair imposes certain conditions on the relative motion between the two bodies it comprises. When these conditions are expressed in analytical form, they are called equations of constraint. Constraint equations
are denoted by $\Phi$ with a superscript indicating the constraint type and the number of algebraic equations, and a subscript indicating the joined bodies. Thus $\Phi^{(r,2)}_{i,j}$ denotes the revolute (r) joint constraint of joined bodies $i$ and $j$, which consists of two equations. Similarly $\Phi^{(t,2)}_{i,j}$ denotes the translational joint (t) constraint of joined bodies $i$ and $j$, which also contains two equations.

### 2.3.1 Revolute joints

With reference to Figure 2.5, the connections between the moving platform (link 1) and the upper portions of the actuator legs (links 2, 3 and 4) are revolute joints. This is also the case for the connections between ground (link 8) and the lower portions of the actuator legs (links 5, 6 and 7).

In order to find the two algebraic equations of $\Phi^{(r,2)}_{i,j}$, consider the schematic representation of a revolute joint connecting bodies $i$ and $j$ as shown in Figure 2.6. Point $P$ denotes the center of the joint and can be considered to be two coincident points; i.e. point $P_i$ on body $i$ and point $P_j$ on body $j$.

![Figure 2.6: Revolute joint P connecting bodies i and j (after [65]).](image)

The vectors $\vec{s}_i^p$ and $\vec{s}_j^p$ respectively describe the location of point $P$ on body $i$ and body $j$. Taken together with vectors $\vec{r}_i$ and $\vec{r}_j$, the constraint equations for the revolute joint are obtained from the closed vector loop expression:

$$\vec{r}_i + \vec{s}_i^p - \vec{s}_j^p - \vec{r}_j = \vec{0}$$

or in terms of global positional two-vectors:

$$\vec{r}_i + \vec{s}_i^p - \vec{s}_j^p - \vec{r}_j = \vec{0}$$

which is equivalent to

$$\Phi^{(r,2)}_{i,j} = \vec{r}_i + A_i \vec{s}_i^p - \vec{r}_j - A_j \vec{s}_j^p = \vec{0} \quad (2.5)$$

Expression (2.5) consists of two algebraic equations, i.e.
These two constraint equations reduce the number of degrees of freedom (DOF) of the system of bodies shown in Figure 2.6, by two. Consequently, if the two bodies of Figure 2.6 are not connected to any other bodies, then the system has four DOF.

In particular, the constraint equations of the six revolute joints of the planar Gough-Stewart platform shown in Figure 2.5 are:

\[
\Phi^{(r,2)}_{1-2} = \begin{bmatrix} x_i + \xi_1^r \cos \phi_i - \eta_1^r \sin \phi_i - x_j - \xi_2^r \cos \phi_j + \eta_2^r \sin \phi_j \\ y_i + \xi_1^r \sin \phi_i + \eta_1^r \cos \phi_i - y_j - \xi_2^r \sin \phi_j - \eta_2^r \cos \phi_j \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.7)
\]

\[
\Phi^{(r,2)}_{1-3} = \begin{bmatrix} x_i + \xi_1^r \cos \phi_i - \eta_1^r \sin \phi_i - x_3 - \xi_3^r \cos \phi_3 + \eta_3^r \sin \phi_3 \\ y_i + \xi_1^r \sin \phi_i + \eta_1^r \cos \phi_i - y_3 - \xi_3^r \sin \phi_3 - \eta_3^r \cos \phi_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.8)
\]

\[
\Phi^{(r,2)}_{1-4} = \begin{bmatrix} x_i + \xi_1^r \cos \phi_i - \eta_1^r \sin \phi_i - x_4 - \xi_4^r \cos \phi_4 + \eta_4^r \sin \phi_4 \\ y_i + \xi_1^r \sin \phi_i + \eta_1^r \cos \phi_i - y_4 - \xi_4^r \sin \phi_4 - \eta_4^r \cos \phi_4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.9)
\]

The simplification in expressions (2.10), (2.11) and (2.12) follow from the particular choice of position and orientation of the chosen local $0_{\xi_1, \eta_1}$-coordinate system.

### 2.3.2 Translational joints

The three actuator legs shown in Figure 2.2, each consists of two links that translate with respect to each other parallel to an axis known as the line of translation. In particular, and with reference to Figure 2.5, the left actuator leg is a translational joint between links 2 and 5, the middle actuator leg is a translational joint between links 3 and 6 and the right actuator leg is a translational joint between links 4 and 7.

Figure 2.7 shows a schematic representation of a translational joint between links $i$ and $j$, from which the two algebraic equations of $\Phi^{(r,2)}_{i-j}$ may be derived.
A constraint is required to eliminate the relative motion between the two bodies in a direction perpendicular to the line of translation. In order to satisfy this constraint, the two vectors \( \vec{s}_i \) and \( \vec{d} \) shown in Figure 2.7 must remain parallel. These vectors are defined by locating three points on the line of translation – points \( Q_i \) and \( P_i \) on body \( i \), and point \( P_j \) on body \( j \). The first algebraic equation of \( \Phi_{i,j}^{(1,2)} \) follows from the fact that the vector product of two parallel vectors is zero, i.e.

\[
\vec{s}_i \times \vec{d} = \vec{0}
\]

which, for the global components of vector \( \vec{s}_i \), i.e. \( \vec{s}_i : s_i = \begin{bmatrix} (x_i^p - x_i^o) \\ (y_i^p - y_i^o) \end{bmatrix} \) and the global components of vector \( \vec{d} \), i.e. \( \vec{d} : d = \begin{bmatrix} (x_j^p - x_j^o) \\ (y_j^p - y_j^o) \end{bmatrix} \), is equivalent to (see [65]):

\[
(x_i^p - x_j^p)(y_j^p - y_i^p) - (x_j^p - x_i^p)(y_j^p - y_i^p) = 0
\]

The second constraint of \( \Phi_{i,j}^{(1,2)} \) eliminates the relative rotation between bodies \( i \) and \( j \), through the condition that

\[
\phi_i - \phi_j - (\phi_i^o - \phi_j^o) = 0
\]

where \( \phi_i^o \) and \( \phi_j^o \) are the initial orientation angles.

The two constraint equations for a translational joint are therefore given by

\[
\Phi_{i,j}^{(1,2)} = \begin{bmatrix} (x_i^p - x_j^p)(y_j^p - y_i^p) - (x_j^p - x_i^p)(y_j^p - y_i^p) \\ \phi_i - \phi_j - (\phi_i^o - \phi_j^o) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}
\]
As in the case of the revolute joint, the translational joint reduces the number of degrees of freedom of a system by two.

Expression (2.13) may be expanded to give
\[
x^p_j y^p_j - x^q_j y^q_j + x^p_j y^p_j - x^q_j y^q_j = 0
\]
with
\[
x^p_j = x_j + \xi^p_j \cos \phi_j - \eta^p_j \sin \phi_j \\
y^p_j = y_j + \xi^p_j \sin \phi_j + \eta^p_j \cos \phi_j \\
x^q_j = x_j + \xi^q_j \cos \phi_j - \eta^q_j \sin \phi_j \\
y^q_j = y_j + \xi^q_j \sin \phi_j + \eta^q_j \cos \phi_j
\]

Constraint (2.16) may therefore explicitly be stated in terms of the planar coordinates of two bodies.

With reference to Figure 2.5 the relevant vectors of translational joint 2–5 are defined using points A and O2 in link 2, and point O5 in link 5. This implies that general constraint (2.16) corresponding to translational joint 2–5, is:
\[
x^h_2 y^h_2 - x^h_5 y^h_5 + x^h_2 y^h_2 - x^h_5 y^h_5 = 0
\]
with
\[
x^h_2 = x_2 \\
y^h_2 = y_2 \\
x^h_5 = x_5 \\
y^h_5 = y_5
\]

By substitution and simplification, the two constraint equations of the translational joint 2–5 of the planar Gough-Stewart platform shown in Figure 2.5 are:
\[
\Phi_{2,5}^{(1,2)} = \begin{bmatrix} -x_2 \xi^h_2 \sin \phi_2 + y_2 \xi^h_2 \cos \phi_2 + x_5 \xi^h_5 \sin \phi_2 - y_5 \xi^h_5 \cos \phi_2 \\ \phi_2 - \phi_5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}
\]

Note that since the ε2 and ε5 axes coincide with the line of translation of translational joint 2–5, the initial rotational angles ϕ2 and ϕ5 (see expressions (2.14) and (2.15)) fall away from the second constraint equation of Φ_{2,5}^{(1,2)}.

Similarly the constraint equations of translational joints 3–6 and 4–7 are respectively found to be
\[
\Phi_{3,6}^{(1,2)} = \begin{bmatrix} -x_3 \xi^h_3 \sin \phi_3 + y_3 \xi^h_3 \cos \phi_3 + x_6 \xi^h_6 \sin \phi_3 - y_6 \xi^h_6 \cos \phi_3 \\ \phi_3 - \phi_6 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}
\]
\[
\Phi_{4,7}^{(1,2)} = \begin{bmatrix} -x_4 \xi^h_4 \sin \phi_4 + y_4 \xi^h_4 \cos \phi_4 + x_7 \xi^h_7 \sin \phi_4 - y_7 \xi^h_7 \cos \phi_4 \\ \phi_4 - \phi_7 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}
\]
2.3.3 Simplified constraints

The remaining constraints are related to the fixed ground-link, i.e. link 8 of the planar Gough-Stewart platform (see Figure 2.5). In order to constrain the translation of the origin and angular motion of a fixed rigid body, the following three equations may be used as the necessary simplified constraints [65]:

\[ \Phi = x_i - c_1 = 0 \]  
\[ \Phi = y_i - c_2 = 0 \]  
\[ \Phi = \phi_i - c_3 = 0 \]

where \( c_1 \), \( c_2 \) and \( c_3 \) are constant quantities.

Since the origin of the local \( 0_s \) coordinate system coincides with the origin of the global \( 0xy \) reference frame, and the two coordinate systems are identically orientated (see Figure 2.5), expressions (2.20), (2.21) and (2.22) for link 8 of the planar Gough-Stewart platform, reduces to:

\[ \Phi = x_8 = 0 \]  
\[ \Phi = y_8 = 0 \]  
\[ \Phi = \phi_8 = 0 \]

For the eight-link kinematic model of the planar Gough-Stewart platform, the 21 independent kinematic constraint equations given by expressions (2.7) - (2.12), (2.17) - (2.19) and (2.23) - (2.25) apply. For a system having \( m \) independent kinematic constraint equations and \( n \) coordinates, the number of degrees of freedom (DOF) is given by:

\[ k = n - m \]

Hence, the eight-link model of the planar Gough-Stewart platform has 24 coordinates, and consequently \( 24 - 21 = 3 \) DOF.

2.4 Driving constraints

Any set of \( k \) coordinates that are independent and are equal in number to the number of DOF of the system, determines the values of the remaining \( m \) coordinates through the solution of the \( m \) independent kinematic constraint equations. Thus for the planar Gough-Stewart platform with three DOF, the values of three independent coordinates must be known to completely describe the system.

In particular, the three planar coordinates describing the position and orientation of link 1, i.e. \( x_i \), \( y_i \) and \( \phi_i \) are the three independent coordinates of the planar Gough-Stewart platform shown in Figure 2.5.
The applicable driving constraints are equations expressing each independent coordinate as a function of time, i.e.:

\[ \Phi^{(d-1,1)} = x_1 - d_1(t) = 0 \]  \hspace{1cm} (2.27)

\[ \Phi^{(d-2,1)} = y_1 - d_2(t) = 0 \]  \hspace{1cm} (2.28)

\[ \Phi^{(d-3,1)} = \phi_1 - d_3(t) = 0 \]  \hspace{1cm} (2.29)

Each driving constraint is denoted by \( \Phi \) with the superscript indicating the driving constraint number, and the number of algebraic equations, e.g. \( \Phi^{(d-1,1)} \) is driving constraint number 1, which involves 1 equation.

Expressions (2.27), (2.28) and (2.29) uniquely define the motion of link 1. With reference to Figure 2.2, link 1 is the moving platform of the planar Gough-Stewart platform and, with the planar machining center in mind, it is clear that in controlling the relative motion between the workpiece and cutting tool, either one can be attached to the moving platform with the other fixed in the plane.

These two possible scenarios are separately dealt with in the next two sub-sections, with specific reference to obtaining for a given tool path, expressions giving the required values of the three independent coordinates \( x_1, y_1, \) and \( \phi_1 \) at any given time instant. The details of deriving the analytical functions \( d_1(t), d_2(t) \) and \( d_3(t) \) that appear in driving constraints (2.27) - (2.29) are explained in Chapter 3.

### 2.4.1 Fixed workpiece

Consider the scenario of the cutting tool mounted on the moving platform with an externally fixed workpiece as shown in Figure 2.8. In this case it is required that the cutting tool be moved along a prescribed tool path specified in the global \( Oxy \)-coordinate system.
At any given time instant it is assumed that the following are known:
1. the global position of the cutting tool tip (P in Figure 2.8) on the prescribed tool path, and
2. the angle $\beta$ between the platform-mounted tool and the normal to the tool path at the point of contact (see Figure 2.8) and measured positive in the CCW direction.

Assumption 1 implies that the global representation of the time varying vector $\mathbf{r}_i^p$, i.e. $\mathbf{r}_i^p : \mathbf{r}_i^p = \begin{bmatrix} x^p \\ y^p \end{bmatrix}$, is known at every instant as the prescribed tool path is traced. The tool tip P can also be located relative to the origin of the local $0, \xi, \eta$-axes by the time varying vector $\mathbf{s}_i^p$. The corresponding fixed components of vector $\mathbf{s}_i^p$, when represented in the local $0, \xi, \eta$-reference frame, is $\mathbf{s}_i^p : s_i^p = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \eta_i^p \end{bmatrix}$, where for any given tool length, the local $\eta_i^p$-component is a known constant.

The following vector loop equation may then be used to find the sought-after global position of link 1:

$$\mathbf{r}_i + \mathbf{s}_i^p = \mathbf{r}_i^p$$

or in global vector representation:

$$\mathbf{r}_i + A_1 \mathbf{s}_i^p = \mathbf{r}_i^p$$

In terms of components this vector equation may be written as
Expression (2.30) contains two scalar equations, i.e.

\[ x_i = x_i^p + \eta_i^p \sin \phi_i \]  

(2.31)

and

\[ y_i = y_i^p - \eta_i^p \cos \phi_i \]  

(2.32)

In order to compute \( x_i \) and \( y_i \), the orientation angle of link 1, \( \phi_i \), must also be known. At every time instant, as the cutting tool progresses along the prescribed tool path, the orientation angle \( \phi_i \) is directly related to the known prescribed angle \( \beta \) (see assumption 2 in Section 2.4.1). To find this relationship, consider the simplified fixed workpiece situation depicted in Figure 2.9, where the mounted cutting tool is collinear with the normal to the tool path at the point of contact.

\[ \tan \theta = \frac{dy}{dx} \]  

(2.33)

and \( \frac{dy}{dx} \) represents the (known) gradient of the prescribed tool path \( y(x) \) at the point of contact.

With the proposed convention that \( \beta \) be measured positive CCW from the normal to the tool path at the point of contact, the orientation angle for the fixed workpiece situation depicted in Figure 2.8 is (remembering that for CW rotations \( \theta \) and \( \phi_i \), take on negative values):

\[ \theta = \phi_i \]
\[ \phi_i = \theta + \beta \]  
(2.34)
with \( \phi_i \) and \( \theta \) measured positive CCW from the horizontal, and \( \beta \) measured as defined above.

Substituting expression (2.34) into expressions (2.31) and (2.32) gives:

\[ x_i = x_i^p + \eta_i^p \sin(\theta + \beta) \]  
(2.35)

and

\[ y_i = y_i^p - \eta_i^p \cos(\theta + \beta) \]  
(2.36)

In summary, for the fixed tool scenario it follows that with \( x^p, y^p \) and \( \beta \) known at a specific time instant or point along the tool path, the corresponding independent coordinates of the planar Gough-Stewart platform, \( x_i, y_i \) and \( \phi_i \) are respectively obtained by substituting the tool path gradient angle \( \theta \) (see expression (2.33)) into expressions (2.35), (2.36) and (2.34).

### 2.4.2 Fixed cutting tool

The second planar machining center scenario is where the workpiece is mounted to the moving platform, and the cutting tool is externally fixed. This case is depicted in Figure 2.10, and since the tool path is now prescribed in terms of the local \( O_1 \hat{s}_i \eta_i \)-coordinate system, it is required that the workpiece be moved such that the fixed cutting tool traces the prescribed tool path.
As in Section 2.4.1, it is also assumed here that at any time instant the following are known:
1. the local position of the cutting tool tip (P in Figure 2.10) on the prescribed tool path, and
2. the angle \( \beta \) (measured positive CCW), from the normal to the tool path at the point of contact, to the
   vertical axis of the fixed cutting tool (see Figure 2.10).

Assumption 1 implies that the local representation of the time varying vector \( \mathbf{s}_t \), i.e. \( \mathbf{s}_t^P = \begin{bmatrix} \xi_P \\ \eta_P \end{bmatrix} \), is
known at every instant as the fixed cutting tool traces the prescribed tool path. The origin of the global
reference frame is chosen to coincide with the tool tip P. Hence, vector \( \mathbf{r}_t \), locating the moving platform
(link 1 in Figure 2.5) has the same magnitude as vector \( \mathbf{s}_t^P \), but is directed in the exact opposite direction.

To find the global components of vector \( \mathbf{r}_t \), first consider the simplified fixed cutting tool situation
shown in Figure 2.11.

\[ \tan \theta' = \frac{d \eta_1}{d \xi_1} \]  

\[ (2.37) \]

and \( \frac{d \eta_1(\xi_1)}{d \xi_1} \) represents the gradient of the prescribed tool path \( \eta_1(\xi_1) \) at the point of contact.
The superscript prime indicates that the gradient angle is determined relative to the local $\xi_1, \eta_1$-coordinate system.

For the simplified situation shown in Figure 2.11, the orientation angle $\phi_1$ is equal in magnitude but oppositely orientated to the gradient angle $\Theta'$, i.e. $\phi_1 = -\Theta'$.

With $\phi_1$ known, the global components of vector $\vec{r}_1$ are obtained using a translation that is similar to the one given by expression (2.1). In particular, the global components of vector $\vec{r}_1$ shown in Figure 2.11 are given by the following two scalar equations:

\begin{align}
    x_1 &= -\xi_1 \cos \phi_1 + \eta_1 \sin \phi_1 \\
    y_1 &= -\xi_1 \sin \phi_1 - \eta_1 \cos \phi_1
\end{align}

(2.38)

(2.39)

However, for the non-zero angle $\beta$ shown in Figure 2.10, the orientation angle $\phi_1$ of the moving platform is:

$$\phi_1 = -\Theta' - \beta$$

(2.40)

using the CCW sign convention previously defined for all three angles.

Substituting expression (2.40) respectively into expressions (2.38) and (2.39) gives:

\begin{align}
    x_1 &= -\xi_1 \cos(\Theta' + \beta) - \eta_1 \sin(\Theta' + \beta) \\
    y_1 &= \xi_1 \sin(\Theta' + \beta) - \eta_1 \cos(\Theta' + \beta)
\end{align}

(2.41)

(2.42)

Consequently, for the fixed cutting tool scenario with $\xi_1^p$, $\eta_1^p$ and $\beta$ known at any specific time instant, the corresponding independent coordinates of the planar Gough-Stewart platform $x_1$, $y_1$ and $\phi_1$ are respectively obtained by substituting the tool path gradient angle $\Theta'$ (see expression (2.37)) into expressions (2.41), (2.42) and (2.40).

### 2.5 Inverse kinematic analysis

In the kinematic analysis of the planar Gough-Stewart platform, the kinematic constraint equations derived in Section 2.3, and the driving constraints derived in Section 2.4 are used. The first and second time derivatives of these constraint equations yield the velocity and acceleration equations.
The method of appended driving constraints [65], is used here for the kinematic analysis of the planar Gough-Stewart platform. This method is presented below in its most general form.

Suppose that the vector of coordinates describing the configuration of a system is given by \( \mathbf{q} = [q_1, q_2, \ldots, q_n]^T \) where \( n \) is the total number of coordinates. If there are \( m \) kinematic constraints expressed in vector form by \( \Phi(\mathbf{q}) = \mathbf{0} \), then \( k \) driving constraints can be appended to the kinematic constraints to obtain \( n = m + k \) equations:

\[
\Phi = \Phi(\mathbf{q}) = \mathbf{0} \tag{2.43}
\]

\[
\Phi^{(d)} = \Phi(\mathbf{q}, t) = \mathbf{0} \tag{2.44}
\]

where the superscript \( (d) \) denotes the driving constraints. Expressions (2.43) and (2.44) represents \( n \) equations in \( n \) unknowns \( \mathbf{q} \) which can be solved for any specific time \( t \).

The velocity equations are obtained by taking the time derivative of expressions (2.43) and (2.44):

\[
\Phi_q \dot{\mathbf{q}} + \Phi^{(d)} = \mathbf{0} \tag{2.45}
\]

\[
\Phi_q^{(d)} \dot{\mathbf{q}} + \Phi_t^{(d)} = \mathbf{0} \tag{2.46}
\]

where \( \Phi_q \) represents the Jacobian of the vector function \( \Phi \) with respect to \( \mathbf{q} \) and \( \Phi_t \) the partial derivative of the function with respect to \( t \).

Expression (2.45) follows from the fact that in general:

\[
\Phi(\mathbf{q}) = \begin{bmatrix}
\Phi_1(\mathbf{q}) \\
\Phi_2(\mathbf{q}) \\
\vdots \\
\Phi_m(\mathbf{q})
\end{bmatrix} \tag{2.47}
\]

and therefore the time derivative of the \( i \)-th entry \( \Phi_i(\mathbf{q}) \) in expression (2.47) is:

\[
\frac{d}{dt} (\Phi_i(\mathbf{q})) = \frac{\partial \Phi_i}{\partial q_1} \dot{q}_1 + \frac{\partial \Phi_i}{\partial q_2} \dot{q}_2 + \cdots + \frac{\partial \Phi_i}{\partial q_n} \dot{q}_n \tag{2.48}
\]

Similarly, expression (2.46) follows from the fact that in general the driving constraints are also explicit functions of time:
\[ \Phi^{(i)}(q, t) = \begin{bmatrix} \Phi^{(i)}_1(q, t) \\ \Phi^{(i)}_2(q, t) \\ \vdots \\ \Phi^{(i)}_n(q, t) \end{bmatrix} \]  

(2.49)

and therefore the corresponding time derivative of the \( i \)-th entry \( \Phi^{(i)}_i(q, t) \) in expression (2.49) is given by

\[ \frac{d}{dt} \left( \Phi^{(i)}_i(q, t) \right) = \frac{\partial \Phi^{(i)}_i}{\partial q_1} \dot{q}_1 + \frac{\partial \Phi^{(i)}_i}{\partial q_2} \dot{q}_2 + \cdots + \frac{\partial \Phi^{(i)}_i}{\partial q_n} \dot{q}_n + \frac{\partial \Phi^{(i)}_i}{\partial t} \]  

(2.50)

The velocity equations (2.45) and (2.46) may also be written as

\[ \begin{bmatrix} \Phi^{(i)}_q \\ \Phi^{(i)}_q \end{bmatrix} \ddot{q} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -\Phi^{(i)} \end{bmatrix} \]  

(2.51)

which represents \( n \) algebraic equations, linear in terms of \( \dot{q} \).

The time derivative of expressions (2.45) and (2.46) yields the acceleration equations:

\[ \Phi^{(i)}_q \ddot{q} + (\Phi^{(i)}_q \dot{q}) \dot{q} = 0 \]  

(2.52)

\[ \Phi^{(i)}_q \ddot{q} + (\Phi^{(i)}_q \dot{q}) \dot{q} + 2\Phi^{(i)}_q \ddot{q} + \Phi^{(i)} = 0 \]  

(2.53)

These expressions are obtained through the following argument. Considering the more general expression (2.46), which also contains \( t \) explicitly, it is clear that the left hand side is a vector function \( F \) of \( q, \dot{q} \) and \( t \):

\[ F(q, \dot{q}, t) = \Phi_q(q, t)\dot{q} + \Phi_q(t, q) \]  

(2.54)

where for convenience the superscript has been dropped. The time derivative of (2.54) may therefore be written as

\[ \frac{dF}{dt} = F_q \ddot{q} + F_{\dot{q}} \dot{q} + F_t \]  

(2.55)

where \( F_q = [\Phi_q \dot{q}]_q + \Phi_q \),

\( F_{\dot{q}} = [\Phi_q \dot{q}]_{\dot{q}} + \Phi_{\dot{q}} \) \( = \Phi_q \) and

\( F_t = \Phi_q \ddot{q} + \Phi_t \).

Substituting the above into (2.55) and then in (2.46) gives

\[ \frac{dF}{dt} = [\Phi_q \dot{q}]_q \dot{q} + \Phi_q \ddot{q} + \Phi_{\dot{q}} \dot{q} + \Phi_t = 0 \]

from which (2.53) [and also (2.52)] follows directly.
Accelerations equations (2.52) and (2.53) may also be written as
\[
\begin{bmatrix}
\Phi_q
\end{bmatrix}
\dot{q} = \begin{bmatrix}
- (\Phi_q \dot{q})_q \\
- (\Phi_q^{(d)} \dot{q})_q - 2\Phi_q^{(d)} \dot{q} - \Phi_q^{(d)}
\end{bmatrix}
\] (2.56)

which represents n algebraic equations linear in terms of \( \dot{q} \).

For the planar Gough-Stewart platform under consideration, expression (2.43) represents the 21 equations given by expressions (2.7) - (2.12), (2.17) - (2.19) and (2.23) - (2.25), and expression (2.44) represents the three driving constraints given by expressions (2.27) - (2.29). These 24 nonlinear equations in 24 unknowns \( q = [x_1, y_1, \phi_1, x_2, y_2, \phi_2, \ldots, x_g, y_g, \phi_g]^T \) (see expression (2.4)) may therefore be solved for any specified time \( t \).

More specifically, at any specified time \( t \), expressions (2.27) - (2.29) provide the \( x_1, y_1 \) and \( \phi_1 \) values.

With reference to Figure 2.5, the global coordinates of points A and B are
\[
\begin{align*}
X_A &= x_1 + \xi_A \cos \phi_1 \\
Y_A &= y_1 + \xi_A \sin \phi_1 \\
X_B &= x_1 + \xi_B \cos \phi_1 \\
Y_B &= y_1 + \xi_B \sin \phi_1
\end{align*}
\] (2.57)

Note that for the specific choice of the local coordinate system of body 1 coinciding with the center of mass of body 1 (see Section 2.3), \( \xi_A < 0 \).

The global positions of points C, D and E are also known for any specific design of the planar Gough-Stewart platform.

The orientation angles of links 2 - 7 may be determined using the "two-argument arc tangent function" \( \text{atan2}(y, x) \). In particular, \( \text{atan2}(y, x) \) denotes the angle whose tangent is \( y \) divided by \( x \). Moreover, both the magnitudes and signs of \( x \) and \( y \) are used in the definition, so that angles are uniquely defined in all four quadrants. For example: \( \text{atan2}(-1.0, -1.0) = -135^\circ \), and \( \text{atan2}(1.0, 1.0) = 45^\circ \) (see [60]).

For the specific choice of local axes shown in Figure 2.5, the respective orientation angles of links 2 and 5, links 3 and 6 as well as links 4 and 7 are equal, i.e.
KINEMATIC AND KINETIC MODELING OF A PLANAR MACHINING CENTER

\[ \phi_2 = \phi_3 = \tan \frac{y^A - y^C}{x^A - x^C} \]  
(2.58)

\[ \phi_4 = \phi_5 = \tan \frac{y^A - y^D}{x^A - x^D} \]  
(2.59)

\[ \phi_6 = \phi_7 = \tan \frac{y^B - y^E}{x^B - x^E} \]  
(2.60)

Note that the revolute joint constraints given by expressions (2.7) - (2.12), as well as the translational joint constraints given by expressions (2.17) - (2.19) are implicitly satisfied in expressions (2.58) - (2.60).

The global positions of links 2 - 7 follow directly from the transformation given by expression (2.1), i.e.

\[
\begin{align*}
    x_2 & = x^A - \xi_2^A \cos \phi_2 \\
    y_2 & = y^A - \xi_2^A \sin \phi_2 \\
    x_3 & = x^A - \xi_3^A \cos \phi_3 \\
    y_3 & = y^A - \xi_3^A \sin \phi_3 \\
    x_4 & = x^B - \xi_4^B \cos \phi_4 \\
    y_4 & = y^B - \xi_4^B \sin \phi_4 \\
    x_5 & = x^C - \xi_5^C \cos \phi_5 \\
    y_5 & = y^C - \xi_5^C \sin \phi_5 \\
    x_6 & = x^D - \xi_6^D \cos \phi_6 \\
    y_6 & = y^D - \xi_6^D \sin \phi_6 \\
    x_7 & = x^E - \xi_7^E \cos \phi_7 \\
    y_7 & = y^E - \xi_7^E \sin \phi_7
\end{align*}
\]  
(2.61)

The global positions and orientation of link 8 (ground) is given by expressions (2.23) - (2.25), i.e. \( x_8 = 0 \), \( y_8 = 0 \) and \( \phi_8 = 0 \). With a known coordinate vector \( q = [x_1, y_1, \phi_1, x_2, y_2, \phi_2, \ldots, x_8, y_8, \phi_8]^T \), the Jacobian matrix \( J = \begin{bmatrix} \Phi_q \\ \Phi_{q(d)} \end{bmatrix} \) of the planar Gough-Stewart platform is uniquely defined (see following expression (2.62)).
### Chapter 2

60

Kinematic and Kinetic Modeling of a Planar Machining Center

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & -z' \sin \theta & -1 & 0 & z' \sin \theta & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & -z' \cos \theta & 0 & -1 & z' \cos \theta & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & -z' \sin \theta & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 & z' \sin \theta & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & -z' \cos \theta & 0 & -1 & z' \cos \theta & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & -z' \sin \theta & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\end{align*}
\]

\[ J = \begin{bmatrix}
0 & 0 & 0 & -y' \sin \phi & y' \cos \phi & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -y' \sin \phi & y' \cos \phi & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -y' \sin \phi & y' \cos \phi & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]
KINEMATIC AND KINETIC MODELING OF A PLANAR MACHINING CENTER

The right hand side of expression (2.51) as applied to the planar Gough-Stewart platform is

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
0 \\
-\Phi^{(6)}_t
\end{bmatrix} =
\begin{bmatrix}
\frac{\partial}{\partial t}d_1(t) \\
\frac{\partial}{\partial t}d_2(t) \\
\frac{\partial}{\partial t}d_3(t)
\end{bmatrix}
\]  \hfill (2.63)

The partial derivatives of the three driving constraints with respect to time are the velocities of link 1, i.e.: \( \frac{\partial}{\partial t}d_1(t) = \dot{x}_1(t) \), \( \frac{\partial}{\partial t}d_2(t) = \dot{y}_1(t) \) and \( \frac{\partial}{\partial t}d_3(t) = \dot{\phi}_1(t) \), the calculation of which, for a specific tool path, is explained in Chapter 3.

Substituting expressions (2.62) and (2.63) into expression (2.51) results in 24 algebraic equations, linear in terms of \( \dot{q} \), where \( \dot{q} = [\dot{x}_1, \dot{y}_1, \dot{x}_2, \dot{y}_2, \dot{\phi}_1, \dot{x}_3, \dot{y}_3, \dot{\phi}_2, \ldots] \) is the velocity vector of the planar Gough-Stewart platform. This linear system, of the general form \( Ax = c \), is solved using the L-U factorization method. This method is a compact form of the Gaussian elimination method of operating on matrix \( A \). After the operation is completed, the set of linear equations \( Ax = c \) is efficiently solved for any given \( c \) vector (see [65] and [55]).

In the linear system (2.56), the Jacobian matrix (expression (2.62)) is also required to solve for the accelerations of the planar Gough-Stewart platform, i.e. for \( \ddot{q} = [\ddot{x}_1, \ddot{y}_1, \ddot{\phi}_1, \ddot{x}_2, \ddot{y}_2, \ddot{\phi}_2, \ldots] \). The right hand side of expression (2.56) is a 24 vector given by
The second partial derivatives of the driving constraints with respect to time are the accelerations of link 1, i.e.: \( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} d_i(t) = \ddot{x}_i(t) \), \( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} d_2(t) = \ddot{y}_i(t) \) and \( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} d_3(t) = \ddot{\phi}_i(t) \). Again the calculation of these accelerations for a prescribed tool path will be explained in Chapter 3.

Substituting expressions (2.62) and (2.64) into expression (2.56) results in 24 algebraic equations, linear in terms of \( \dot{\mathbf{q}} \), which can again be solved using the L-U factorization method.

### 2.6 Kinetic analysis

Kinetics is the study of motion and its relationship with the forces that produce the motion (see Figure 2.1). Using Newton’s second law, the equations of motion of a continuous rigid body are derived in Appendix A. This Section deals with the application of the equations of motion to a general system of unconstrained bodies experiencing planar motion. The underlying theory is also applied to a system of constrained bodies experiencing planar motion with specific reference to the planar Gough-Stewart platform.

#### 2.6.1 Planar equations of motion for a system of unconstrained bodies

The equations of motion for a single unconstrained body moving in the plane (see Appendix A) may be written in matrix form as
where for notational simplicity the polar moment of inertia \( j_{\phi i} \) is denoted by \( \mu \) (see [65]). The subscript \( i \) in expression (2.65) indicates that these are the equations of motion of body \( i \).

According to Nikravesh [65], expression (2.65) may also be written as

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
m & m \\
m & m \\
\mu & \mu \\
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
\ddot{x} \\
\ddot{y} \\
\ddot{\phi} \\
\end{bmatrix} =
\begin{bmatrix}
f_{(x)} \\
f_{(y)} \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]

(2.66)

where \( M_i = \text{diag}[m, m, \mu] \), \( \mathbf{q}_i = [x, y, \phi]^T \) and \( \mathbf{g}_i = [f_{(x)}, f_{(y)}, n]^T \).

Furthermore, for a system of \( b \) unconstrained bodies, expression (2.66) is repeated \( b \) times to give

\[
M \ddot{\mathbf{q}} = \mathbf{g}
\]

(2.67)

where \( M = \text{diag}[M_1, M_2, \ldots, M_b] \), \( \mathbf{q} = [\mathbf{q}_1^T, \mathbf{q}_2^T, \ldots, \mathbf{q}_b^T]^T \) and \( \mathbf{g} = [\mathbf{g}_1^T, \mathbf{g}_2^T, \ldots, \mathbf{g}_b^T]^T \).

The system mass matrix \( M \) is a \( n \times n \) constant diagonal matrix, and vectors \( \mathbf{q} \), \( \dot{\mathbf{q}} \), \( \ddot{\mathbf{q}} \) and \( \mathbf{g} \) are \( n \) vectors.

Note that \( n = 3b \), where \( n \) is the number of coordinates of the system of \( b \) bodies (see expression (2.3)).

### 2.6.2 Planar equations of motion for a system of constrained bodies.

If the system of bodies is interconnected by kinematic joints, it is referred to as a system of constrained bodies.

In general the system vector of coordinates for \( b \) constrained bodies is denoted by \( \mathbf{q} \) (see expression (2.3)). Furthermore the kinematic joints in the system can be represented as \( m \) independent constraints \( \Phi(\mathbf{q}) = 0 \) as given in expression (2.43). These \( m \) independent equations are normally nonlinear in terms of \( \mathbf{q} \) (see expression (2.47)).

Each kinematic joint introduces reaction forces between connecting bodies. These reaction forces, which are also referred to as constraint forces, are denoted by vector \( \mathbf{g}^{(c)} \):
\[
g^{(e)} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{g}_1^{(e)T} & \mathbf{g}_2^{(e)T} & \cdots & \mathbf{g}_b^{(e)T} \end{bmatrix}^T
\]  
(2.68)

where \( \mathbf{g}_i^{(e)}, i = 1, 2, \ldots, b \) is the vector of the resultant of the joint reaction forces acting on body \( i \). The sum of the constraint forces \( \mathbf{g}^{(e)} \) and the external forces \( \mathbf{g} \) provides the total forces acting on the system. Hence, expression (2.67) may be rewritten to read:

\[
M \ddot{\mathbf{q}} = \mathbf{g} + \mathbf{g}^{(e)}
\]  
(2.69)

For a system of constrained bodies experiencing planar motion, the reaction forces represented by expression (2.68) may be expressed in terms of the same coordinate system as the vector of coordinates \( \mathbf{q} \).

Consider the planar example shown in Figure 2.12, where the reaction force \( \mathbf{R} \) is acting on the body \( i \) at the revolute joint \( P \). The three coordinates of the body follow from expression (2.2), i.e.,

\[
\mathbf{q}_i = [r^T, \phi]^T = [x, y, \phi]^T
\]

and the local coordinate system is assumed to be centered at \( C_i \), the center of mass of body \( i \) (see Section 2.3). For convenience the subscript \( i \) is dropped in what follows.

![Figure 2.12: Planar body with reaction force applied at the revolute joint.](image)

![Figure 2.13: Virtual displacement of planar body.](image)
If the body undergoes a virtual displacement such that $C'$ is the new position of the center of mass, and $P'$ is the new position of the revolute joint (see Figure 2.13), the corresponding work done by the reaction force $\mathbf{R}$ is

$$dW = R_x(dx - s_d \sin \phi) + R_y(dy + s_d \cos \phi)$$

$$= R_x(dx + R_y(dy + (\phi) s \sin \phi + R_y s \cos \phi)d\phi$$

$$= g_x(dx) + g_y(dy) + g_\phi d\phi$$

Thus, the reaction force $\mathbf{R}$ may be represented by a three-vector $\mathbf{g}$ with each component associated with a planar coordinate, i.e., $\mathbf{g} = [g_x, g_y, g_\phi]^T$. The three components of $\mathbf{g}$ are consistent with the three coordinates $x$, $y$ and $\phi$ and are called the generalized forces associated with the chosen coordinates $q$.

The introduction of generalized forces allows for the constraint force vector $\mathbf{g}^{(e)}$ to be expressed in terms of the constraint equations $\Phi$ given by expression (2.43). In particular expression (2.43) contains $m$ independent constraint equations $\Phi(q) = 0$. Furthermore, if the joints are assumed frictionless, the work done by the constraint forces in a virtual (infinitesimal) displacement $dq$ is zero, i.e.,

$$\mathbf{g}^{(e)^T}dq = 0 \quad (2.70)$$

The Taylor series expansion of expression (2.43) about $q$ is

$$\Phi(q + dq) = \Phi(q) + \Phi_q dq \quad (2.71)$$

if the higher order terms in $dq$ are ignored. Since the virtual displacement $dq$ must be consistent with the constraints (expression (2.43)), it is required that

$$\Phi(q + dq) = 0 \quad (2.72)$$

Substituting expressions (2.43) and (2.72) into expression (2.71), yields

$$\Phi_q dq = 0 \quad (2.73)$$

According to Nikravesh [65] the vector of $n$ coordinates $q$ may be partitioned into a set of $m$ dependent coordinates $u$ and a set of $n - m$ independent coordinates $v$, i.e., $q = [u^T, v^T]^T$. This partitioning yields

$$dq = [du^T, dv^T]^T, \quad \Phi_q = [\Phi_u, \Phi_v] \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{g}^{(e)} = \left[\mathbf{g}_u^{(e)^T}, \mathbf{g}_v^{(e)^T}\right]^T.$$

Expression (2.70) may therefore be written as

$$\mathbf{g}_u^{(e)^T}du = -\mathbf{g}_v^{(e)^T}dv \quad (2.74)$$

and from expression (2.73) it follows that

$$\Phi_q du = -\Phi_q dv \quad (2.75)$$

Appending these two expressions to each other gives
\[
\begin{bmatrix}
g_{(u)}^{(v)^T} \\
g_{(v)}^{(u)}
\end{bmatrix}
\text{du} = -\begin{bmatrix}
g_{(v)}^{(u)^T} \\
g_{(u)}^{(v)}
\end{bmatrix}
\text{dv}
\] (2.76)

Since \( \Phi_u \) is an \( m \times m \) matrix with \( m \) independent rows, \( \Phi_u \) is a basis in \( \mathbb{R}^m \), and \( g_{(v)}^{(u)^T} \) may therefore be written as a linear combination of the \( m \) rows of \( \Phi_u \), i.e.,

\[
g_{(v)}^{(u)} = \Phi_u^T \lambda
\] (2.77)

where \( \lambda \) is a \( m \)-vector of multipliers known as LaGrange multipliers.

Substitution of expression (2.77) into expression (2.74) yields

\[
\lambda^T \Phi_u \text{du} = -g_{(v)}^{(u)^T} \text{dv}
\] (2.78)

and from expression (2.75) it follows that

\[
-\lambda^T \Phi_v \text{dv} = -g_{(v)}^{(u)^T} \text{dv}
\] (2.79)

Since vector \( v \) is independent, expression (2.79) must hold for an arbitrary virtual displacement \( \text{dv} \), which implies that

\[
g_{(v)}^{(u)} = \Phi_v^T \lambda
\] (2.80)

Furthermore, appending expressions (2.77) and (2.80) yields

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
g_{(u)}^{(u)} \\
g_{(v)}^{(v)}
\end{bmatrix}
= \begin{bmatrix}
\Phi_u^T \\
\Phi_v^T
\end{bmatrix}
\lambda
\] (2.81)

or simply

\[
g^{(u)} = \Phi_v^T \lambda
\] (2.82)

Finally substituting expression (2.82) into expression (2.69) gives the planar equations of motion for a system of constrained bodies, i.e.:

\[
M \ddot{q} - \Phi_v^T \lambda = g
\] (2.83)

Thus for a given vector of external forces \( g \), the forward dynamic analysis yields a unique solution for \( q \), \( \dot{q} \), \( \ddot{q} \) and \( \lambda \) when the constraint equations (2.43) are considered simultaneously with the differential equations of motion (2.83), and a proper set of initial conditions are specified.

2.6.3 Constraint reaction forces

The joint reaction forces given by expression (2.82) are studied here for the joints (kinematic pairs) of the planar Gough-Stewart platform.
2.6.3.1 Revolute joint

Consider the revolute joint connecting bodies 1 and 2 of the planar Gough-Stewart platform (see Figure 2.5). Figure 2.14 shows a schematic representation of the isolated revolute joint.

The equations of motion of bodies 1 and 2 follow from expression (2.83), i.e.,

\[ M_1 \ddot{q}_1 - \Phi_{q_1}^T \lambda = g_1 \]  

(2.84)

and

\[ M_2 \ddot{q}_2 - \Phi_{q_2}^T \lambda = g_2 \]  

(2.85)

Using the applicable entries in the Jacobian matrix of the planar Gough-Stewart platform (see expression (2.62)), expression (2.84) may be written in expanded form:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
  m \\
  m \\
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
  \ddot{x} \\
  \ddot{y} \\
\end{bmatrix}
= 
\begin{bmatrix}
  1 & 0 \\
  0 & 1 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
  \lambda_1 \\
  \lambda_2 \\
\end{bmatrix}
- 
\begin{bmatrix}
  \mu_1 \dot{\phi}_1 \\
  \mu_2 \dot{\phi}_2 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
  -\xi_1 \sin \phi_1 \\
  \xi_2 \cos \phi_1 \\
\end{bmatrix}
= 
\begin{bmatrix}
  f_{(x)} \\
  f_{(y)} \\
\end{bmatrix}  
\]  

(2.86)

Expression (2.86) may be written as a set of three separate equations:

\[ m_1 \ddot{x}_1 = f_{(x)_1} + \lambda_1 \]  

(2.87)

\[ m_1 \ddot{y}_1 = f_{(y)_1} + \lambda_2 \]  

(2.88)

\[ \mu_1 \dot{\phi}_1 = n_1 - (\xi_1 \sin \phi_1) \lambda_1 + (\xi_2 \cos \phi_1) \lambda_2 \]  

(2.89)

Expression (2.87) indicates that besides the resultant external force \( f_{(x)_1} \), another force \( \lambda_1 \) due to the constraints acts in the x-direction on body 1. Similarly, expression (2.88) indicates that besides external force \( f_{(y)_1} \), another constraint force \( \lambda_2 \) acts in the y-direction on body 1. Figure 2.15 shows a free-body diagram of body 1, indicating constraint forces \( \lambda_1 \) and \( \lambda_2 \).
The moment arm of $\lambda_1$ is $\xi_1^A \sin \phi_1$ with $\xi_1^A < 0$, which results in a positive moment $-(\xi_1^A \sin \phi_1)\lambda_1$ about $0_1$ coinciding with the center of mass of body 1. Similarly, the moment arm of $\lambda_2$ is $\xi_2^A \cos \phi_2$ with $\xi_2^A < 0$, and therefore moment $(\xi_2^A \cos \phi_2)\lambda_2$ acts in the negative rotational direction.

Expression (2.85) may similarly be written in expanded form using the applicable entries in the Jacobian matrix (expression (2.62)):

$$
\begin{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
\dot{x} \\
\dot{y}
\end{bmatrix}
\end{bmatrix}
=
\begin{bmatrix}
-1 & 0 \\
0 & -1
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
\lambda_1 \\
\lambda_2
\end{bmatrix}
+ \begin{bmatrix}
f_{(x)} \\
f_{(y)}
\end{bmatrix}

\text{(2.90)}
$$

or

$$
m_2 \ddot{x}_2 = f_{(x)2} - \lambda_1 \tag{2.91}
$$

$$
m_2 \ddot{y}_2 = f_{(y)2} - \lambda_2 \tag{2.92}
$$

$$
\mu_2 \ddot{\phi}_2 = n_2 + (\xi_1^A \sin \phi_2)\lambda_1 - (\xi_2^A \cos \phi_2)\lambda_2 \tag{2.93}
$$

Expressions (2.91) and (2.92) indicate that the constraint forces $\lambda_1$ and $\lambda_2$ respectively act in the negative x and y-directions on body 2. The corresponding free-body diagram of body 2 is shown in Figure 2.16.

Figure 2.16: Free-body diagram of body 2 as part of the revolute joint with body 1.
From Figure 2.16 it follows that the moment arm of $\lambda_1$ is $\xi^+_2 \sin \phi_2$ with $\xi^+_2 > 0$, which yields a positive moment $(\xi^+_2 \sin \phi_2)\lambda_1$ about $0_2$ coinciding with the center of mass of body 2. Similarly, the moment arm of $\lambda_2$ is $\xi^+_2 \cos \phi_2$ with $\xi^+_2 > 0$, which gives a negative moment $-(\xi^+_2 \cos \phi_2)\lambda_2$ about $0_2$.

Note that the multipliers $\lambda_1$ and $\lambda_2$ can assume both positive and negative values. In any case, the reaction forces acting at the revolute joint on the connecting bodies are always equal in magnitude and mutually opposite in direction.

### 2.6.3.2 Translational joint

Consider the translational joint between bodies 2 and 5 of the planar Gough-Stewart platform. Figure 2.17 shows a schematic representation of the joint.

![Figure 2.17: Translational joint between bodies 2 and 5 of the planar Gough-Stewart platform.](image)

Following a similar argument as that outlined in Section 2.6.3.1, the equations of motion of body 2 may be written as:

$$
\begin{bmatrix}
 m & -\xi^+_2 \sin \phi_2 & 0 \\
 m & \xi^+_2 \cos \phi_2 & 0 \\
 \mu \xi^+_2 \cos \phi_2 & (x_2 - x_1)\xi^+_2 \cos \phi_2 + (y_2 - y_1)\xi^+_2 \sin \phi_2 & -1
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
 \dot{x}_2 \\
 \dot{y}_2 \\
 \dot{\phi}_2
\end{bmatrix}
= 
\begin{bmatrix}
 f_{(x)} \\
 f_{(y)} \\
 n
\end{bmatrix}
$$

or

$$
m_2 \ddot{x}_2 = f_{(x)} + \xi^+_2 \sin \phi_1 \lambda_1 
$$

$$
m_2 \ddot{y}_2 = f_{(y)} + \xi^+_2 \cos \phi_1 \lambda_1 
$$

$$
\mu_2 \ddot{\phi}_2 = n_2 + (x_2 - x_1)\xi^+_2 \cos \phi_2 \lambda_1 + (y_2 - y_1)(\xi^+_2 \sin \phi_2)\lambda_1 - \lambda_2 
$$
The free-body diagram of body 2 is shown in Figure 2.18. Nikravesh [65] explains that the force associated with \( \lambda_1 \) is the reaction force caused by the constraint equation which eliminates relative motion between bodies 2 and 5 in a direction perpendicular to the line of translation. It is therefore expected, as can easily be proved, that this reaction force (\( \mathbf{k}_1 \) in Figure 2.18) is perpendicular to the line of translation.

![Figure 2.18: Free-body diagram of body 2 as part of the translational joint with body 5.](image)

It follows from (2.97), and as shown in Figure 2.18, that the moment arm of the force \( \xi_2 \cos \phi_2 \lambda_1 \) about 0, is \( (x_s - x_2) \), and the moment arm of the force \( -\xi_2 \sin \phi_2 \lambda_1 \) is \( (y_5 - y_2) \). For the orientation of body 2 shown in Figure 2.18, \( (x_s - x_2) < 0 \) and \( (y_5 - y_2) < 0 \), from which it follows that both moments \( (x_s - x_2)\xi_2 \cos \phi_2 \lambda_1 \) and \( (y_5 - y_2)\xi_2 \sin \phi_2 \lambda_1 \) are negative moments.

The contribution of the second constraint equation, which eliminates relative rotation between bodies 2 and 5, is a couple acting on body 2. Note that \( \lambda_2 \) may be a positive or negative quantity.

The equations of motion of body 5 are similarly given by

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
\dot{x} \\
\dot{y} \\
\dot{\phi}
\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}
m & 0 & \xi_2 \sin \phi_2 \\
0 & m & -\xi_2 \cos \phi_2 \\
\mu & \mu & \mu
\end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix}
x \\
y \\
\phi
\end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix}
f_{(x)} \\
f_{(y)} \\
f_{(n)}
\end{bmatrix}
\]

or

\[
m \ddot{x}_5 = f_{(x)5} + \xi_2 \sin \phi_2 \lambda_1 \\
m \ddot{y}_5 = f_{(y)5} - \xi_2 \cos \phi_2 \lambda_1 \\
\mu \ddot{\phi}_5 = n_5 - \lambda_2
\]
The corresponding free-body diagram of body 5 is shown in Figure 2.19. Note that $-\lambda_2$ is the only constraint moment acting on body 5.

![Free-body diagram of body 5](image)

**Figure 2.19:** Free-body diagram of body 5 as part of the translational joint with body 2.

### 2.6.4 Vector of forces

The external force vector $g$ in expression (2.83), contains all the external forces acting on the individual bodies of the system, i.e.,

$$g = [g_1^T, g_2^T, \ldots, g_b^T]^T$$  \hspace{1cm} (2.102)

To construct the vector $g$, the external force vector for each body must be determined. For a typical body $i$, the external force vector $g_i$ is

$$g_i = [f_{(x)}, f_{(y)}, n_i]^T$$  \hspace{1cm} (2.103)

where $f_{(x)}$, $f_{(y)}$, and $n_i$ are respectively the sums of all force components in the $x$ and $y$ directions and the sum of all the moments respectively.

In the remainder of this sub-section, the two types of external forces that act on the planar Gough-Stewart platform are discussed, and their contribution to $g$ determined.

#### 2.6.4.1 Gravity

The first external force acting on the moving bodies that make up the planar Gough-Stewart platform is gravity. In accordance with Nikravesh [65], the direction of gravity is chosen to be in the negative $y$-direction. If $w_i$ is the weight of the body $i$, i.e., $w_i = m_i g$, then the contribution of this force to the vector of force of body $i$ is:

$$g_i^{(\text{gravity})} = [0, -w_i, 0]^T$$  \hspace{1cm} (2.104)
The first seven bodies of the planar Gough-Stewart platform in Figure 2.5, all have known weights contributing to the vector of external forces of each body, i.e., $g_i^{(grav)} = [0, -w_i, 0]^T$, for $i = 1, 2, \ldots, 7$. Since the eighth body is the fixed ground, a zero weight is allocated to it, and a zero contribution is made to the vector of external force of body 8.

### 2.6.4.2 Single force

The second type of external force that acts on the planar Gough-Stewart platform is what Nikravesh [65] refers to as a *single force*. This is due to the fact that the planar Gough-Stewart platform is to be used as a machining center. For both machining centers with either a fixed workpiece or a fixed cutting tool, there is a contact force between the cutting tool and the workpiece. This contact force may be modeled as a single force.

Consider the general case, where a single force $\mathbf{f}_i$ acts with a known direction at point $P_i$ on body $i$ as shown in Figure 2.20.

![Figure 2.20: A body acted upon by a constant force (after [65]).](image)

The force $\mathbf{f}_i$ in the above figure has components $f_{(x)i}$ and $f_{(y)i}$. If the local coordinates of $P_i$ are known as $s_i^P = [\xi_i, \eta_i]^T$, then the global coordinates of point $P_i$ are given by $s_i^p = A_i s_i^P$ (see expression (2.1)).

The moment of $\mathbf{f}_i$ about $\mathbf{0}_i$, which coincides with the center of mass of body $i$ is

$$n_i = (\bar{s}_i^p \mathbf{f}_i)_{(x)}$$

$$= -s_{(y)i} f_{(x)i} + s_{(x)i} f_{(y)i}$$

$$= -[(\xi_i \sin \phi_i + \eta_i \cos \phi_i) f_{(x)i} + (\xi_i \cos \phi_i - \eta_i \sin \phi_i) f_{(y)i}]$$

(2.105)

Note that $\bar{s}_i^p$ represents the expansion of $s_i^p$ into a skew-symmetric matrix (see expression (A.18) and [65]).
The contribution of this force to the vector of forces of body $i$ is

$$g_i^{(\text{cut})} = [f_{(x)}, f_{(y)}, n]_i^T$$  \hspace{1cm} (2.106)

In particular, the contact force between the cutting tool and the workpiece may also be referred to as a cutting force. For both the fixed workpiece and fixed tool cases of the planar Gough-Stewart platform machining center, this cutting force contributes to the vector of forces of body 1 (the moving platform). The contribution of the cutting force to the vector of forces of body 1 is subsequently labeled as $g_i^{(\text{cut})}$.

2.6.4.2.1 Fixed workpiece

The same assumptions as listed under Section 2.4.1, are made here, namely that at any given time instant it is assumed that the following are known:

1. the global position of the cutting tool tip (P in Figure 2.8) on the prescribed tool path, and
2. the angle $\beta$ between the platform mounted tool and the normal to the tool path at the point of contact (see Figure 2.8) and measured positive in the CCW direction.

The free-body diagram of a typical fixed workpiece scenario is depicted in Figure 2.21. Since the cutting force is applied to body 1 it is designated by $\bar{f}_i^{\text{cut}}$.

![Figure 2.21: Free-body diagram for the fixed workpiece scenario.](image)

The cutting force $\bar{f}_i^{\text{cut}}$ is collinear with the tangent to the prescribed tool path at the point of contact, and it is modeled as a "resistance" force. This implies that the cutting force $\bar{f}_i^{\text{cut}}$ is oppositely directed to the direction of travel, with magnitude assumed to be linearly dependent on the magnitude of tangential speed with which the prescribed tool path is traced $|\bar{v}^{\text{cut}}|$. 

Chapter 2
It is assumed here that the vector $\vec{V}_{\text{cut}}$ has a known magnitude and direction, which are calculated as will be described in Chapter 3 (see also Section 2.5 expression (2.63)). With the magnitude of the cutting velocity $|\vec{V}_{\text{cut}}|$ known, the magnitude of the cutting force is given by:

$$|\vec{f}_{\text{cut}}| = |\vec{V}_{\text{cut}}| C_{\text{cut}} \quad (2.107)$$

where $C_{\text{cut}}$ is a “cutting force constant” expressed in $\frac{\text{Ns}}{\text{m}}$ as a positive quantity corresponding to the assumption made.

Vector $\vec{f}_{\text{cut}}$ is represented in the global reference frame by $\vec{f}_{\text{cut}}$, i.e., $\vec{f}_{\text{cut}} = [f_{\text{cut}}^x, f_{\text{cut}}^y]^T$. Similarly, vector $\vec{V}_{\text{cut}}$ is represented in the global reference frame by $\vec{V}_{\text{cut}}$. Since the gradient angle $\theta$ is known at the point of contact, i.e., $\tan \theta = \frac{dy}{dx}$ (see expression (2.33)), the components of the cutting force as shown in Figure 2.21 are given by

$$f_{\text{cut}}^x = \left| f_{\text{cut}}^x \right| \cos \theta \quad (2.108)$$

and

$$f_{\text{cut}}^y = \left| f_{\text{cut}}^y \right| \sin \theta \quad (2.109)$$

The point of contact between the cutting tool and the workpiece is given by $s^p_i = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \eta^i_p \end{bmatrix}$ as explained in Section 2.4.1. Hence the moment of $\vec{f}_{\text{cut}}$ about the center of mass of body 1, $\eta^i_{\text{cut}}$, may be determined using expression (2.105), i.e.,

$$\eta^i_{\text{cut}} = - (\eta^i_p \cos \phi_i) f_{\text{cut}}^x + (\eta^i_p \sin \phi_i) f_{\text{cut}}^y \quad (2.110)$$

The validity of expression (2.110) may be verified by considering the situation depicted in the free-body diagram (Figure 2.21). It is clear that the x-component of the cutting force $f_{\text{cut}}^x$ in Figure 2.21 is negative. The moment arm of $f_{\text{cut}}^x$ is $\eta^i_p \cos \phi_i$. Thus, the first term in expression (2.110), $- (\eta^i_p \cos \phi_i) f_{\text{cut}}^x$, yields a positive moment.

Similarly, the y-component of the cutting force $f_{\text{cut}}^y$ in Figure 2.21 is negative, and the moment arm of $f_{\text{cut}}^y$ is $\eta^i_p \sin \phi_i$. The second term of expression (2.110), $- (\eta^i_p \sin \phi_i) f_{\text{cut}}^y$, therefore also yields a positive moment in expression (2.110).
For the fixed workpiece scenario, the contribution of the cutting force to the force vector of body 1, is

\[ \mathbf{g}_{1}^{\text{cutting f}} = \left[ f_{(x)}^{\text{cut}}, f_{(y)}^{\text{cut}}, n_{1}^{\text{cut}} \right]^T \]  (2.111)

where \( f_{(x)}^{\text{cut}} \) is given by expressions (2.108), \( f_{(y)}^{\text{cut}} \) is given by expressions (2.109), and \( n_{1}^{\text{cut}} \) is given by expression (2.110).

### 2.6.4.2.2 Fixed cutting tool

The same assumptions as listed in Section 2.4.2 apply here, i.e., at any time instant the following are assumed to be known:

1. the local position of the cutting tool tip (P in Figure 2.10) on the prescribed tool path, and
2. the angle \( \beta \) (measured positive CCW), from the normal to the tool path at the point of contact, to the vertical axis of the fixed cutting tool (see Figure 2.10).

The free-body diagram of a typical fixed cutting tool scenario is depicted in Figure 2.22. As in the case of the fixed workpiece, the cutting force is again applied to body 1 and designated by \( \mathbf{f}_{1}^{\text{cut}} \).

![Figure 2.22: Free-body diagram for a fixed cutting tool scenario.](image-url)

The modeling of the cutting force associated with the fixed cutting tool is done in a similar way to that done for the fixed workpiece.

In particular, the cutting force \( \mathbf{f}_{1}^{\text{cut}} \) shown in Figure 2.22 is collinear with the tangent to the prescribed tool path at the point of contact. The tool path is specified in terms of the local \( 0_{1}, \xi_{1}, \eta_{1} \)-coordinate...
The gradient angle of the prescribed tool path is known in terms of the local coordinates, \( \tan \theta' = \frac{d\eta_1}{d\xi_1} \) (see expression (2.37)), hence the cutting force \( \mathbf{f}_{\text{cut}} \) may be represented in the local \( 0, \xi, \eta \) - coordinate system by \( \mathbf{f}_{\text{cut}} = [f_{\text{cut}(\xi)}, f_{\text{cut}(\eta)}]^T \). The components of \( \mathbf{f}_{\text{cut}} \) are given by (see Figure 2.22)

\[
\begin{align*}
    f_{\text{cut}(\xi)} &= -f_{\text{cut}} \cos \theta' \\
    f_{\text{cut}(\eta)} &= -f_{\text{cut}} \sin \theta'
\end{align*}
\]  

(2.112) (11)

and

\[
\begin{align*}
    f_{\text{cut}(\xi)} &= f_{\text{cut}} \cos \phi_i - f_{\text{cut}} \sin \phi_i \\
    f_{\text{cut}(\eta)} &= f_{\text{cut}} \sin \phi_i + f_{\text{cut}} \cos \phi_i
\end{align*}
\]  

(2.114) (11)

or equivalently as

\[
\begin{align*}
    \mathbf{f}_{\text{cut}} &= A_i \mathbf{f}_{\text{cut}} \text{ with } A_i = \begin{bmatrix}
        \cos \phi_i & -\sin \phi_i \\
        \sin \phi_i & \cos \phi_i
    \end{bmatrix}
\end{align*}
\]

With the global components of the cutting force known, the moment of \( \mathbf{f}_{\text{cut}} \) about the center of mass of body 1 may be determined using expression (2.105). Note that this moment \( \mathbf{n}_{\text{cut}} \) may also be determined using the local components of the cutting force, i.e.

\[
\begin{align*}
    \mathbf{n}_{\text{cut}} &= (\mathbf{S}_\gamma^p \mathbf{f}_{\text{cut}})_i \\
    &= -f_{\text{cut}(\xi)} + \xi f_{\text{cut}(\eta)} \\
    &= (\mathbf{S}_\gamma^p \mathbf{f}_{\text{cut}})_i \\
    &= \mathbf{n}_{\text{cut}}^p \\
    &= \mathbf{n}_{\text{cut}}^p
\end{align*}
\]  

(2.116)

The validity of expression (2.116) is borne out by inspection of the free-body diagram depicted in Figure 2.22, from which it follows that the moment arm of \( \mathbf{f}_{\text{cut}(\xi)} \) is \( \eta_i^p \). Since the \( \xi \)-component of the cutting
force in Figure 2.22 is directed in the negative \( \xi \)-direction, the term \(-\eta_i^\xi f^\text{cut}_{(i)}\) in expression (2.116) results in a positive moment. Similarly, the moment arm of \( f^\text{cut}_{(i)} \) is \( \xi^\xi \), and since the \( \eta \)-component of the cutting force in Figure 2.22 is in the positive \( \eta \)-direction, the term \( \xi^\eta f^\text{cut}_{(i)} \) yields a positive moment.

For the fixed cutting tool scenario, the contribution of the cutting force to the external force vector of body 1 is:

\[
g^\text{(cutting f)}_1 = [f^\text{cut}_x, f^\text{cut}_y, n^\text{cut}]^T \tag{2.117}
\]

where \( f^\text{cut}_{(i)} \) is given by expression (2.114), \( f^\text{cut}_{(i)} \) is given by expression (2.115) and \( n^\text{cut}_{(i)} \) is given by expression (2.116).

### 2.6.5 Inverse dynamic analysis

If the forces acting on a mechanical system are known, then the equations of motion can be solved to obtain the motion of the system [65]. This process is known as the forward dynamic analysis. In some problems, a specified motion for a mechanical system is sought and the objective is to determine the forces that must act on the system to produce such a motion. This process is usually referred to as inverse dynamic or kinetostatic analysis.

Haug [66] explains that inverse dynamic analysis is a hybrid form of kinematic and dynamic analysis in which the time history of positions or relative positions of one or more bodies in the system is prescribed, leading to complete determination of position, velocity, and acceleration of the system from the equations of kinematics. The equations of motion of the system are then solved, with known position, velocity, and acceleration, as algebraic equations to determine the forces that are required to generate the prescribed motion.

In general, for a system of constrained bodies with \( n \) coordinates and \( m \) independent constraint equations, the inverse dynamic analysis therefore requires \( k \) driving constraints of the form \( \Phi(q,t) = 0 \) (see expression (2.44)) to be specified. The number of driving constraints to be specified is equal to the number of degrees of freedom of the system, i.e. \( k = n - m \) (see expression (2.26)).

The three driving constraints of the planar Gough-Stewart platform under consideration have already been dealt with in Section 2.4. These constraints uniquely define the motion of body 1 (the moving platform) of the planar Gough-Stewart platform along a prescribed path.
Section 2.5 shows how the inverse kinematic analysis of the planar Gough-Stewart platform is done using the method of appended driving constraints. The inverse kinematic analysis yields the positions \( q \), velocities \( \dot{q} \) and accelerations \( \ddot{q} \) at each time instant as the prescribed path is traced.

The objective of this sub-section is to determine the three actuator forces required to move the moving platform along the prescribed path. For this purpose the equations of motion of a system of constrained bodies (expression (2.83)) are rewritten to include the unknown forces, i.e.,

\[
M \ddot{q} - \Phi_q^T \lambda = g^{(k)} + g^{(u)}
\]  

(2.118)

where \( g^{(k)} \) is the vector of known forces (see expression (2.102)), and \( g^{(u)} \) is the vector of unknown forces. Expression (2.118) may be rewritten as

\[
M \ddot{q} - \Phi_q^T \lambda - g^{(u)} = g^{(k)}
\]  

(2.119)

The unknown actuator forces are designated by \( \bar{f}_1, \bar{f}_2 \) and \( \bar{f}_3 \), and respectively act on bodies 2, 3 and 4 as shown in Figure 2.23. By Newton’s third law, for each force there is an equal and opposite reaction force. Hence, reaction forces \( -\bar{f}_1, -\bar{f}_2 \) and \( -\bar{f}_3 \), respectively act on bodies 5, 6 and 7 and are also shown in the schematic Figure 2.23.

In particular, the lines of action of forces \( \bar{f}_1 \) and \( -\bar{f}_1 \) coincide with the line of translation of the translational joint between bodies 2 and 5. Similarly, the lines of action of forces \( \bar{f}_2 \) and \( -\bar{f}_2 \) coincide with the common line of translation of the translational joint between bodies 3 and 6, and the lines of action of forces \( \bar{f}_3 \) and \( -\bar{f}_3 \) coincide with the common line of translation of bodies 4 and 7.

Figure 2.23: Unknown actuator forces of the planar Gough-Stewart platform.
Figure 2.24 shows the free-body diagram of body 2 with the unknown actuator force $\tilde{f}_i$ applied to the body, as well as the constraint force $\tilde{k}_i$ and constraint moment $\lambda_2$ as a result of the translational coupling between bodies 2 and 5.

From expression (2.119) it follows that the equations of motion of body 2 are given by:

$$
\begin{bmatrix}
    m & 0 & -\xi_2^A \sin \phi_2 & 0 \\
    m & 0 & \xi_2^A \cos \phi_2 & 0 \\
    \mu & 0 & (x_2 - x_1)\xi_2^A \cos \phi_2 & (y_2 - y_1)\xi_2^A \sin \phi_2 \\
    \mu & 0 & 0 & -1
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
    \dot{x} \\
    \dot{y} \\
    \dot{\phi}_2 \\
    \dot{\lambda}_2
\end{bmatrix}
= 
\begin{bmatrix}
    f_i \cos \phi_2 \\
    f_i \sin \phi_2 \\
    0 \\
    -1
\end{bmatrix}
= 
\begin{bmatrix}
    f_x \\
    f_y \\
    f_z
\end{bmatrix}
$$

Expression (2.120) may also be written as

$$
\begin{bmatrix}
    m & 0 & -\xi_2^A \sin \phi_2 & 0 & \cos \phi_2 \\
    m & 0 & \xi_2^A \cos \phi_2 & 0 & \sin \phi_2 \\
    \mu & 0 & (x_2 - x_1)\xi_2^A \cos \phi_2 & (y_2 - y_1)\xi_2^A \sin \phi_2 & -1 \\
    \mu & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
    \dot{x} \\
    \dot{y} \\
    \dot{\phi}_2 \\
    \dot{\lambda}_2 \\
    \dot{\lambda}_1
\end{bmatrix}
= 
\begin{bmatrix}
    f_i \\
    f_x \\
    f_y
\end{bmatrix}
$$

where $f_i > 0$ indicates that force $\tilde{f}_i$ is a "push-force" as chosen in Figure 2.24. Should the solution of expression (2.120) yield that $f_i < 0$, then force $\tilde{f}_i$ actually is a "pull-force" acting in the opposite direction. Also note that actuator force $\tilde{f}_i$ does not cause a couple about the center of mass of body 2.
With regard to the reaction force $-\vec{f}_i$, Figure 2.25 shows the free-body diagram of body 5 with the unknown reaction force $-\vec{f}_i$ applied to the body, as well as the constraint force $-\vec{k}_i$ and constraint moment $-\lambda_i$ as a result of the translational coupling between bodies 2 and 5.

Figure 2.25: Free-body diagram of body 5 with the applied unknown reaction force $-\vec{f}_i$.

From expression (2.119) it follows that the equations of motion of body 5 are given by:

$$
\begin{bmatrix}
m & \xi_1^e \sin \phi_2 \ 0
\\
m & -\xi_2^e \cos \phi_2 \ 0
\\
\mu & 0 \ 1
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
\dot{x} \\
\dot{y} \\
\dot{\phi}
\end{bmatrix}
-\begin{bmatrix}
-\xi_2^e \sin \phi_2 \\
0
\\
1
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
-\lambda_1 \\
0
\end{bmatrix}
-\begin{bmatrix}
-\xi_1^e \cos \phi_2 \\
0
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
-\lambda_2 \\
0
\end{bmatrix}
-\begin{bmatrix}
-\lambda_i \\
0
\end{bmatrix}
= \begin{bmatrix}
f_{(x)} \\
0
\end{bmatrix}
$$

(2.122)

where $f_i < 0$ indicates that the reaction force $-\vec{f}_i$ is a "push reaction force" as chosen in Figure 2.25.

Should the solution of expression (2.122) yield that $f_i > 0$, the associated reaction force $-\vec{f}_i$ actually is a "pull reaction force" acting in the opposite direction. Note that there is no couple about the center of mass of body 5.

Expression (2.120) may also be written as

$$
\begin{bmatrix}
m & \xi_1^e \sin \phi_2 \ 0
\\
m & -\xi_2^e \cos \phi_2 \ 0
\\
\mu & 0 \ 1
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
\dot{x} \\
\dot{y} \\
\dot{\phi}
\end{bmatrix}
-\begin{bmatrix}
-\xi_2^e \sin \phi_2 \\
0
\\
1
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
\lambda_1 \\
0
\end{bmatrix}
-\begin{bmatrix}
-\xi_1^e \cos \phi_2 \\
0
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
\lambda_2 \\
0
\end{bmatrix}
= \begin{bmatrix}
f_{(x)} \\
f_{(y)} \\
n
\end{bmatrix}
$$

(2.123)

Similar expressions are also obtained for bodies 3 and 6, as well as bodies 4 and 7. Hence, the equations of motion of the total planar Gough-Stewart platform system may be written as:

$$
M\ddot{q} - [\Phi_q^T \ B] \begin{bmatrix}
\lambda \\
\mu
\end{bmatrix}
= g^{(k)}
$$

(2.124)

where $M$ is a constant diagonal matrix, i.e. $M = \text{diag}[m_1, m_2, \mu_1, m_3, \mu_3, \ldots, m_n, \mu_n]$,

$\ddot{q}$ is the acceleration vector $\ddot{q} = [\ddot{x}_1, \ddot{y}_1, \ddot{\phi}_1, \ddot{x}_2, \ddot{y}_2, \ddot{\phi}_2, \ldots, \ddot{x}_n, \ddot{y}_n, \ddot{\phi}_n]^T$,

$\Phi_q$ consist of the first 21 rows of the Jacobian matrix $J$ (see expression (2.62)).
$B$ is the following $24 \times 3$ matrix:

$$
B = \begin{bmatrix}
0 & 0 & \cos \theta_4 \sin \theta_5 \\
0 & 0 & \sin \theta_4 \sin \theta_5 \\
0 & 0 & -\cos \theta_4 - \sin \theta_4 \\
0 & 0 & 0
\end{bmatrix}
$$

$\lambda$ is a 21-vector containing the Lagrange multipliers, i.e.,

$$\lambda = [\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots, \lambda_{21}]^T,$$

$\mathbf{f}$ is the vector containing the magnitudes of the unknown actuator forces

$$\mathbf{f} = [f_1, f_2, f_3]^T,$$

using the positive sign convention chosen in Figure 2.24, and

$\mathbf{g}^{(k)}$ is the vector of known external forces given acting on the planar Gough-Stewart platform

$$
\mathbf{g}^{(k)} = [\mathbf{g}_1^{\text{gravity}}, \mathbf{g}_2^{\text{cutting}}, \mathbf{g}_3^{\text{gravity}}]^T
$$

The cutting force $\mathbf{g}_i^{\text{cutting}}$ is either given by expression (2.111) or expression (2.117) depending on the particular machining scenario, and finally expression (2.124) may be solved using a linear solver as explained in Section 2.5, to find the 24-vector $[\lambda, \mathbf{f}]^T$.

### 2.7 Verification of special purpose program

In this section, the special-purpose program for analyzing the planar Gough-Stewart platform machining center is tested and verified.

#### 2.7.1 Jacobian matrix verification

The Jacobian matrix derived for the planar Gough-Stewart platform (expression (2.62)), is of importance, since it is used in both the inverse kinematic analysis of the mechanism and the inverse dynamic analysis. In order to verify the correctness of the Jacobian matrix constructed here, and to be used in the special purpose program, the general purpose Kinematic Analysis Program (KAP) developed by Nikravesh [65] is applied to do the inverse kinematic analysis of a specific planar Gough-Stewart platform following the simple test trajectory shown in Figure 2.26.
The length of the moving platform is chosen as 0.4 m, and the coordinates of the lower rotational joints C, D and E are as indicated in Figure 2.26.

Three independent driving constraints of the form given by expressions (2.27) - (2.29) prescribe the motion of the planar Gough-Stewart platform. In particular, for the simple straight line trajectory shown in Figure 2.26, expressions (2.27), (2.28) and (2.29) are respectively:

\[
\Phi^{(d-1,1)} = x_1 + 0.1 - 0.05t^2 = 0
\]

\[
\Phi^{(d-2,1)} = y_1 + 0.1 - 0.05t^2 = 0
\]

\[
\Phi^{(d-3,1)} = \phi_1 - \frac{\pi}{12} + \frac{\pi}{6}t^2 = 0
\]

Driving constraints (2.125) and (2.126) control the displacement of the center of the moving platform (body 1 in Figure 2.5) in the x-y plane along a straight line from (-0.1, -0.1) at \( t = 0 \), to (-0.05, 0.05) at \( t = 1 \) s. Driving constraint (2.127) controls the rotation of the moving platform from its initial orientation \( \phi_1 = 15^\circ \) at \( t = 0 \), to its final orientation \( \phi_1 = -15^\circ \) at \( t = 1 \) s.

The results obtained by KAP [65] for the velocities and accelerations of the seven moving bodies are in exact agreement with the results obtained using expressions (2.51) and (2.56), indicating that the Jacobian matrix of the planar Gough-Stewart platform constructed here (expression (2.62)) is correct.

Furthermore, the analytical solution of the positions and orientations of the 7 bodies obtained from expressions (2.57) - (2.61) is also in exact agreement with the iterative solution obtained using KAP.
2.7.2 Inverse dynamic analysis verification

The objective of this sub-section is to verify the methodology for determining the unknown actuator forces as explained in Section 2.6.5.

The verification of expression (2.124) is done noting that it may also be used to determine the \textit{static} balance forces required to support the planar Gough-Stewart platform in static equilibrium. It follows that with the planar Gough-Stewart platform in static equilibrium, $\ddot{q} = 0$, and therefore expression (2.124) reduces to:

$$- [\Phi_q^T \quad B] \begin{bmatrix} \lambda \\ f_f \end{bmatrix} = g^{(k)} \quad (2.128)$$

As explained in Sections 2.4 and 2.5, by prescribing the three driving constraints (expressions (2.27) - (2.29)) at any specific time instant, the Jacobian matrix given by expression (2.62) is uniquely defined. Therefore for any given stationary platform configuration, equation (2.128) may be solved for the vector $[\lambda \\ f_f]$ using a linear solver.

In expression (2.128):

$\Phi_q$ consist of the first 21 rows of the Jacobian matrix $J$ (see expression (2.62)),

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$\lambda$ is a 21-vector containing the LaGrange multipliers, i.e., $\lambda = [\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \ldots, \lambda_{21}]^T$, and

$$g^{(k)} = [g_{1}^{(k)T}, g_{2}^{(k)T}, \ldots, g_{21}^{(k)T}]^T.$$  

Consider the simple test example shown in Figure 2.27, where the vector of external forces is reduced to $g^{(k)} = [1600, -440, 250, 0, 0, 0, \ldots, 0]^T$. 

Chapter 2

83
The results obtained for the unknown actuator forces \( \mathbf{f} \) by solving expression (2.128) are \( f_1 = -1400.8 \, \text{N} \), \( f_2 = 1799.2 \, \text{N} \) and \( f_3 = 95 \, \text{N} \).

For this simple problem the unknown actuator force \( f_3 \) may also be obtained by considering the sum of the moments about \( A \), i.e.: \( \sum M_A = 0 : 250 - 440 + 2f_3 = 0 \) and thus \( f_3 = 95 \, \text{N} \).

Also, summing the external forces in the x- and y-directions and substituting the value for \( f_3 \) yields the following equations in the unknown actuator forces \( f_1 \) and \( f_2 \):

\[
\begin{align*}
\sum F_x &= 0 : f_1 \cos 60^\circ - f_2 \cos 60^\circ + 1600 = 0 \\
\sum F_y &= 0 : f_1 \sin 60^\circ + f_2 \sin 60^\circ + f_3 - 440 = 0
\end{align*}
\]

Solving (2.129) and (2.130) finally gives \( f_1 = -1400.8 \, \text{N} \) and \( f_2 = 1799.2 \, \text{N} \). This together with the value of \( f_3 = 95 \, \text{N} \) confirms the accuracy of the results obtained via (2.128).

### 2.7.3 Fixed workpiece vs. fixed tool verification

The two modes of operation of the machining center are explained in Sections 2.4.1 and 2.4.2. The objective of this section is to verify the actuator force computations, by reconciling the results for the fixed tool scenario with that of the fixed workpiece scenario. This is done by considering the case where the respective tool path specifications are such that the space path of the platform is identical for both scenarios.
For this illustrative example the fixed workpiece scenario is as depicted in Figure 2.28, and the cutting tool is omitted from the moving platform.

The center of mass of the moving platform (body 1 in Figure 2.5) is controlled to trace the circle defined by

\[ x^2 + (y + 0.3)^2 = 0.3^2 \]

(2.131)

at a constant tangential speed of 0.1 m/s.

This circle is traced in a CCW sense starting at (x, y) = (0,0). It is furthermore required that the prescribed circular path be traced while a horizontal orientation is maintained by the moving platform, i.e. \( \dot{\phi}_1 = 0 \).

With the positional driving constraints and the fixed orientation prescribed, the inverse kinematic analysis may be done to obtain the acceleration vector \( \ddot{q} = [\ddot{q}_1^T, \ddot{q}_2^T, ..., \ddot{q}_i^T]^T \) for any time instant. It is then used in the inverse dynamic analysis, which is done via the equations of motion given by expression (2.124).

The following mass matrix is used for the example planar Gough-Stewart platform shown in Figure 2.28:

\[ M = \text{diag}[M_1^T, M_2^T, ..., M_i^T] \]

(2.132)

with
\[
\begin{align*}
M_1 &= [3, 3, 0.0625]^T \\
M_2 &= M_3 = M_4 = [0.6, 0.6, 0.02]^T \\
M_5 &= M_6 = M_7 = [2.5, 2.5, 0.003]^T \\
M_8 &= [0, 0, 0]^T
\end{align*}
\]

and specified in SI units.

Figure 2.29 shows the computed actuator forces required to control the planar Gough-Stewart platform along the prescribed circular path at the specified constant tangential speed of 0.1 m/s. The cutting force, discussed in Section 2.6.4.2.1, is neglected here.

![Fixed Workpiece Actuator forces](image)

**Figure 2.29: Actuator forces for the fixed workpiece circular tool path.**

For the fixed tool scenario to be consistent with that of the fixed workpiece scenario, it is required to specify a prescribed path in the moving workpiece such that the motion in space of the moving platform is identical to the motion of the moving platform associated with the fixed workpiece example shown in Figure 2.28. For this to be so, the fixed cutting tool has to trace the prescribed solid circular path shown in Figure 2.30 in a CCW manner starting at \((\xi_1, \eta_1) = (0, 0)\).
In particular, the circular path in the local platform coordinate frame is defined by

$$
\xi_t^2 + (\eta_t - 0.3)^2 = 0.3^2
$$

(2.133)

The global coordinate system is shown with its origin coinciding with the cutting tool tip. Using the transformations given by expressions (2.41) and (2.42), the motion of the moving platform in the global reference frame can be computed. This path is shown by the dashed circle in Figure 2.30 and corresponds exactly to the motion of the moving platform associated with the fixed workpiece example shown in Figure 2.28. Figure 2.31 shows the computed actuator forces required to manipulate the moving platform along the prescribed path of Figure 2.30. As is expected they are in exact agreement with the actuator forces shown in Figure 2.29. Note again that the cutting forces, discussed in Section 2.6.4.2.2, are neglected here to ensure that the load conditions are equivalent for both scenarios. This allows for a comparison of results. The fact that the results are identical gives further confidence in the respective methods of analysis.
Figure 2.31: Actuator forces for the fixed tool circular tool path.
3 TRAJECTORY-PLANNING THROUGH
INTERPOLATION BY OVERLAPPING CUBIC ARCS
AND CUBIC SPLINES

3.1 Basic interpolation problem in trajectory planning

Given:

(i) a set of nodal points \( \{ P_i = (x_i, y_i), i = 0, 1, ..., N \} \) along a general curve \( C \) to be followed by a working point \( (wp) \) from \( P_0 \) to \( P_N \) as shown in Figure 3.1,

(ii) prescribed tangential speeds of \( wp \), \( s_0 \) and \( s_N \) at \( P_0 \) and \( P_N \) respectively,

(iii) either prescribed tangential acceleration \( \ddot{s}_0 \) at \( P_0 \) or \( \ddot{s}_N \) at \( P_N \) of \( wp \), and

(iv) \( \frac{dy}{dx} \) at both \( P_0 \) and \( P_N \).

Then it is required to determine:

(a) an acceptable time interval \( [0, T] \) during which the curve is executed,

(b) time parametric curves \( X(t) \) and \( Y(t), t \in [0, T] \) that interpolate the nodal points \( (x_i, y_i) \), and

(c) continuous time parametric curves for velocities \( \dot{X}(t) \) and \( \dot{Y}(t) \) as well as for the accelerations \( \ddot{X}(t) \) and \( \ddot{Y}(t), t \in [0, T] \).

![Figure 3.1: Basic interpolation problem.](image)
Without loss in generality consider the case in (iii) where $s_{\text{n}}$ is known at $P_n$. Objectives (a), (b) and (c) may then be achieved by following the procedure outlined in the following subsections.

### 3.1 Determination of time parametric intervals

In order to achieve objective (a) stipulated above, the first task is to determine the total path length $S$ from $P_0$ to $P_N$. This is done as follows: for each arc $(x_{i-1}, y_{i-1})$ to $(x_i, y_i)$, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, N$, determine the corresponding path length $s_i$. Firstly determine a cubic interpolating polynomial approximation $p_i(x)$ over each arc interval, i.e. $y(x) \approx p_i(x)$, $x \in [x_{i-1}, x_i]$ (or $x(y) \approx p_i(y)$, $y \in [y_{i-1}, y_i]$ depending on what is the most convenient).

### 3.1.1 Determination of interpolating and overlapping cubic arcs

It is assumed that for any three consecutive nodal points (nodes) $P_{i-1}$, $P_i$ and $P_{i+1}$, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, N-1$ in the given set of nodal points $\{P_i = (x_i, y_i), i = 0, 1, \ldots, N\}$, at least one of the following conditions must hold:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Expression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1(a)</td>
<td>$x_{i+1} &gt; x_i &gt; x_{i-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1(b)</td>
<td>$x_{i+1} &lt; x_i &lt; x_{i-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2(a)</td>
<td>$y_{i+1} &gt; y_i &gt; y_{i-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2(b)</td>
<td>$y_{i+1} &lt; y_i &lt; y_{i-1}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 3.1**

In the event of non-compliance with all four the above conditions, the set of nodal points is considered insufficient since it implies that the section of the curve, represented by the three nodes that do not satisfy any of the conditions, cannot be expressed in the form where one of the coordinate variables is a unique valued function of the other. An extreme example of this non-uniqueness is depicted in Figure 3.2 which shows a complete curve $C$ represented by the three nodes $P_0$, $P_1$, and $P_2$.

![Figure 3.2: Insufficient set of nodal points.](image-url)
Clearly $x_2 < x_1$ while $x_1 > x_0$, violating both conditions 1(a) and 1(b), and further $y_2 < y_1$ while $y_1 > y_0$, violating both conditions 2(a) and 2(b). This situation can easily be remedied by specifying, for example, two additional nodes, resulting in a set of five nodal points, as shown in Figure 3.3.

The five nodal points shown in Figure 3.3, $\{P_i = (x_i, y_i), i = 0, 1, ..., 4\}$ may be grouped to form three overlapping triplets of consecutive nodes, i.e.

| Triplet 1: $\{P_0, P_1, P_2\}$ | $x_2 > x_1 > x_0$ (satisfying condition 1(a)) \[y_2 < y_1 \text{ and } y_1 > y_0 \text{ (violating conditions 2(a) and 2(b))} \]
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Triplet 2: $\{P_1, P_2, P_3\}$ | $x_3 < x_2$ and $x_2 > x_1$ (violating conditions 1(a) and 1(b)) \[y_3 < y_2 < y_1 \text{ (satisfying condition 2(b))} \]
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Triplet 3: $\{P_2, P_3, P_4\}$ | $x_4 < x_3 < x_2$ (satisfying condition 1(b)) \[y_4 < y_3 < y_2 \text{ (satisfying condition 2(b))} \]

Table 3.2

Curve C shown in Figure 3.3 may now be approximated by four (in general N) overlapping interpolating arcs shown separately in Figures 3.4, 3.5 and 3.6. Along each arc one variable may be expressed as a unique function of the other depending on which condition in Table 3.1 is satisfied. In particular it may be desired to represent each arc by a cubic polynomial interpolating function.
It follows by inspection that arc 1 in Figure 3.4, passing through the three nodes of triplet 1, may be represented by a unique valued function of x (see Tables 3.1 and 3.2). In particular it may be expressed as a cubic polynomial in x of the form:

\[ p_1(x) = a_1 + b_1(x - x_0) + c_1(x - x_0)^2 + d_1(x - x_0)^3, \quad x \in [x_0, x_2] \]  

(3.1)

The derivative of (3.1) with respect to x is given by

\[ \frac{dp_1(x)}{dx} = b_1 + 2c_1(x - x_0) + 3d_1(x - x_0)^2, \quad x \in [x_0, x_2] \]  

(3.2)

The four unknown coefficients of the cubic interpolating polynomial \((a_1, b_1, c_1, \text{ and } d_1)\) may be uniquely determined by utilizing the initial known gradient, i.e. \(\frac{dy}{dx}\) at \(P_0\) (see given data (iv), at the start of Section 3.1), as well as the three nodal points of triplet 1. More specifically substituting each of the three nodal points of triplet 1 into equation (3.1), results in three independent equations:

\[ y_0 = p_1(x_0) = a_1 \]  

(3.3)

\[ y_1 = p_1(x_1) = a_1 + b_1(x_1 - x_0) + c_1(x_1 - x_0)^2 + d_1(x_1 - x_0)^3 \]  

(3.4)

\[ y_2 = p_1(x_2) = a_1 + b_1(x_2 - x_0) + c_1(x_2 - x_0)^2 + d_1(x_2 - x_0)^3 \]  

(3.5)

The fourth independent equation follows from substituting the initial gradient \(\frac{dy}{dx}\) at \(P_0\) into equation (3.2):

\[ \frac{dy}{dx} \bigg|_{P_0} = \frac{dy(x_0)}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx} p_1(x_0) = b_1 \]  

(3.6)

With \(a_1\) and \(b_1\) known from expressions (3.3) and (3.6) respectively, one may solve for \(c_1\) and \(d_1\) using expressions (3.4) and (3.5):
from (3.4): \[ c_i = \frac{y_i - a_i - b_i(x_i - x_0)}{(x_i - x_0)^2} - d_i(x_i - x_0) \]

or \[ c_i = e_i - d_i(x_i - x_0) \]

where \[ e_i = \frac{y_i - a_i - b_i(x_i - x_0)}{(x_i - x_0)^2} \], and substituting the expression for \( c_i \)

into (3.5): \[ y_2 = a_1 + b_1(x_2 - x_0) + (e_1 - d_1(x_1 - x_0))(x_2 - x_0)^2 + d_1(x_2 - x_0)^3 \]

and therefore \[ d_1 = \frac{y_2 - a_1 - b_1(x_2 - x_0) - e_1(x_2 - x_0)^2}{(x_2 - x_0)^3 - (x_1 - x_0)(x_2 - x_0)^2} \]

It is proposed here that the cubic interpolating polynomial \( p_1(x) \) constructed in this manner be called a clamped three-order interpolating cubic arc, or simply a C-3 node cubic arc.

Although cubic arc 1 interpolates through points \( P_0, P_1 \) and \( P_2 \) and is thus valid over the interval \([x_0, x_2]\), it will only be used to represent the cubic polynomial function over the first interval \([x_0, x_1]\). Cubic arc 1 is forced through the three nodes of triplet 1 (see Table 3.1) with only the initial gradient \( \left( \frac{dy}{dx} \right)_{x_0} \) being enforced. The approximation \( p_1(x) \) is therefore expected to deteriorate in gradient accuracy in the vicinity of node \( P_2 \) and this is the reason why it will only be used over \([x_0, x_1]\). To obtain a more reliable approximation between nodes \( P_1 \) and \( P_2 \) an overlapping strategy is employed to avoid the accumulation of excessive gradient approximation errors, which will result in increasingly inaccurate fitted cubic arcs.

The cubic arc 2 passing through the three nodes of triplet 2, (see Figure 3.5) is also represented by a cubic polynomial function this time of \( y \) (see also Table 3.1 and Table 3.2). This function is formally expressed as

\[ \text{Figure 3.5: Cubic arc 2.} \]
The derivative of (3.7) with respect to $y$ is
\[
\frac{d}{dy} p_2(y) = b_2 + 2c_2(y - y_1) + 3d_2(y - y_1)^2
\]

Again the initial gradient of cubic arc 2 at $P_1$ is required together with the three nodes of triplet 2 to calculate the four unknown coefficients ($a_2$, $b_2$, $c_2$ and $d_2$) of polynomial (3.7). Here, at the start of arc 2 (as for the subsequent arcs) the value of the gradient is not explicitly prescribed and is therefore unknown. However, once the four unknown coefficients of the previous cubic arc 1 have been determined, equation (3.2) provides an approximation to the required gradient at $P_1$, i.e.
\[
\frac{dy}{dx} = \left. \frac{dy}{dx} \right|_{P_1} \approx \frac{dx}{dy} p_1(x_1) = b_1 + 2c_1(x_1 - x_0) + 3d_1(x_1 - x_0)^2
\]

Thus in computing the coefficients of approximating arc 2 the condition
\[
\frac{dx}{dy} \left|_{P_1} = \left[ \frac{dy}{dx} \left|_{P_1} \right]^{-1} \right.
\]

is used.

Polynomial $p_2(x)$ will only be used to describe the arc between nodes $P_1$ and $P_2$.

Cubic arc 3 passing through the three nodes of triplet 3 (see Figure 3.6) is different to the previous arcs in that both conditions 1(b) and 2(b) are satisfied (see Table 3.1 and Table 3.2). This implies that cubic arc 3 can be expressed as a cubic polynomial function of either $x$ or $y$ and a choice has to be made. If this situation occurs, only one of the following two conditions will be satisfied:

| Condition 3(a): | $|x_{i+1} - x_{i-1}| \geq |y_{i+1} - y_{i-1}|$ |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------|
| Condition 3(b): | $|x_{i+1} - x_{i-1}| < |y_{i+1} - y_{i-1}|$ |

| Table 3.3 |
For the case depicted in Figure 3.6, cubic arc 3 satisfies condition 3(a) in Table 3.3, and it is therefore clearly preferable to express the arc as a cubic polynomial function of x:

$$p_3(x) = a_3 + b_3(x - x_3) + c_3(x - x_3)^2 + d_3(x - x_3)^3, \ x \in [x_3, x_4]$$

(3.10)

The unknown coefficients of cubic polynomial (3.10) are determined in a similar manner to those of cubic arc 2 (equation (3.7)), with the initial gradient at P taken as

$$\left. \frac{dy}{dx} \right|_{P_2} = \left[ \frac{dy_2(y_3)}{dy} \right]^{-1}. \ \ \ \text{Again } p_3(x) \ \ \text{will only be used over the first interpolating interval, i.e., between nodes } P_2 \text{ and } P_3 \text{ (Figure 3.6).}

Having determined cubic arc 3, it remains to find a suitable cubic interpolating polynomial function $p_4(x) \ , \ x \in [x_3, x_4]$, which is to represent the final interval $P_3$ to $P_4$ of the total curve under consideration.

The overlapping strategy may be continued for the final part of the curve by fitting a cubic arc through nodes $P_4$, $P_3$ and $P_2$, and utilizing the given gradient at $P_4$ (see given data (iv) at the beginning of Section 3.1). The polynomial has the form

$$p_4(x) = a_4 + b_4(x - x_4) + c_4(x - x_4)^2 + d_4(x - x_4)^3, \ x \in [x_4, x_5]$$

(3.11)

The derivative of (3.11) with respect to $x$ is

$$\frac{d}{dx}p_4(x) = b_4 + 2c_4(x - x_4) + 3d_4(x - x_4)^2, \ x \in [x_4, x_5]$$

(3.12)

With the given final gradient $\frac{dy}{dx}$ at $P_4$ and interpolating through the three nodes $P_4$, $P_3$ and $P_2$, four independent equations in the unknown coefficients follow from expressions (3.11) and (3.12) as before. These equations may be simultaneously solved to give $a_4$, $b_4$, $c_4$ and $d_4$. The resultant interpolating polynomial $p_4(x)$, representing arc 4 and to be used over the final interval between nodes $P_3$ and $P_4$, is also indicated in Figure 3.6.

The following truth table shows how the different conditions listed in Table 3.1 and Table 3.3 determine the dependent variable for a specific arc. The rows show different combinations of satisfied and violated conditions, where a 1 indicates that a specific condition is satisfied and a 0 that it is violated.
Here, for illustrative purposes, the presentation of the overlapping cubic arc methodology for constructing an approximation to a curve defined by nodal points \( P_0, P_1, \ldots, P_N \), has been restricted to the case \( N = 4 \). The extension of the method to the more general case where \( N \) may be larger than 4 is clear and obvious.

### 3.1.1.2 Computation of total path length \( S \)

With \( p_i(x) \) (or \( p_i(y) \)) representing the approximation to the curve to be used over \([x_{i-1}, x_i]\) known, the corresponding curve length \( s_i \) may be obtained by integration. From the differential relationship \( ds^2 = dx^2 + dy^2 \) it follows that \( ds = \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2} \, dx \) and therefore the curve length \( s_i \) is given by

\[
s_i = \int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_i} \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2} \, dx = \int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_i} f(x) \, dx
\]

with \( a = x_{i-1}, b = x_i, \) and \( f(x) = \sqrt{1 + \left[b_i + 2c_i(x - x_{i-1}) + 3d_i(x - x_{i-1})^2\right]^2} \)

for each \( i = 1, 2, \ldots, N \)

It is convenient to do the integration numerically by using the composite Simpson’s rule for \( n \) subintervals [55]:

\[
\int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_i} f(x) \, dx \approx \frac{h}{3} \left[ f(a) + 2 \sum_{j=1}^{(n-1)/2} f(x_{2j}) + 4 \sum_{j=1}^{(n-1)/2} f(x_{2j-1}) + f(b) \right] 
\]

(3.13)

where \( n \) is even, \( h = \frac{(b-a)}{n} \), and \( x_k = a + kh \) for \( k = 0, 1, \ldots, n \)
The total path length $S$ of curve $C$ is then given by

$$S = \sum_{i=1}^{N} s_i \tag{3.14}$$

### 3.1.1.3 Dependence of curve length on parameter $t$

Assume that the distance $s$ of the working point (wp) along the curve is represented by a cubic polynomial in time $t$ of the form:

$$s(t) = a_s + b_s t + c_s t^2 + d_s t^3, \quad t \in [0, T] \tag{3.15}$$

Expression (3.15) is associated with a known initial curve length $s(0) = s_0$ (usually $s_0 = 0$), a known initial tangential speed $\dot{s}(0) = v_0$ (usually $v_0 = 0$), as well as a known final curve length $s(T) = S$ (usually found via expression (3.14) above).

For the time being, assume that a gradual increase in tangential speed is required over the time interval $t \in [0, T]$, such that a specified tangential speed $v^*$ is attained at time $T$, i.e. $\dot{s}(T) = v^*$. The time derivative of (3.15), representing the tangential speed over the total path is

$$\dot{s}(t) = b_s + 2c_s t + 3d_s t^2, \quad t \in [0, T] \tag{3.16}$$

The acceleration over the total path may be obtained from the time derivative of (3.16):

$$\ddot{s}(t) = 2c_s + 6d_s t, \quad t \in [0, T] \tag{3.17}$$

It is further required that the magnitude of the final tangential acceleration has to be zero, i.e. $\ddot{s}(T) = 0$.

Now, with $s(0) = s_0$, $s(T) = S$, $\dot{s}(0) = v_0$, $\dot{s}(T) = v^*$ and $\ddot{s}(T) = 0$ known, one may solve for $a_s$, $b_s$, $c_s$, $d_s$ and $T$ as follows:

$$s(0) = a_s = s_0$$

$$\dot{s}(0) = b_s = v_0$$

$$s(T) = S = a_s + b_s T + c_s T^2 + d_s T^3 \tag{3.18}$$

$$\dot{s}(T) = v^* = b_s + 2c_s T + 3d_s T^2 \tag{3.19}$$

$$\ddot{s}(T) = 0 = 2c_s + 6d_s T \tag{3.20}$$

from (3.20): $c_s = -3d_s T \tag{3.21}$

and substituting (3.21) into (3.19): $v^* = v_0 - 3d_s T^2$, from which it follows that

$$d_s = \frac{v_0 - v^*}{3T^2} \tag{3.22}$$

Substituting (3.22) into (3.21): $c_s = \frac{v^* - v_0}{T} \tag{3.23}$
and substituting (3.22) and (3.23) into (3.18): 
\[ S = s_0 + T \left( \frac{v_0}{3} + \frac{2v^*}{3} \right) \]
from which it finally follows that

\[ T = \frac{3(S - s_0)}{v_0 + 2v^*} \]  

(3.24)

Note that if the initial time instant \( t_0 \neq 0 \), the corresponding polynomial \( s(t) \) can readily be obtained by the simple replacement of \( T \) by \( T - t_0 \) in expressions (3.18) - (3.24) and the corresponding replacement of \( t \) by \( t - t_0 \) in expressions (3.17) - (3.19).

For each node \( P_i = (x_i, y_i) \), \( i = 0, 1, ..., N \) the total path length up to the specific node may be determined from (3.14):

\[ S_i = \sum_{j=1}^{i} s_j, \quad i = 0, 1, ..., N \]  

(3.25)

Further, with \( S_i \), \( i = 1, 2, ..., N-1 \) known, the Newton-Raphson iterative method may be used to solve for the corresponding nodal times \( t_i \), \( i = 1, 2, ..., N-1 \) [55]. This well-known and powerful numerical method solves for the root of a non-linear equation of the form \( f(x) = 0 \) via the iterative scheme:

\[ x^{(j)} = x^{(j-1)} - \frac{f(x^{(j-1)})}{f'(x^{(j-1)})}, \quad j = 1, 2, ... \]

where an initial estimate \( x^{(0)} \) is given.

To solve for a specific \( t_i \) corresponding to distance \( S_i \), requires the solution of the non-linear equation

\[ f(t_i) = s(t_i) - S_i = 0 \]

where from (3.15): \( s(t_i) = a_i + b \cdot t_i + c_i \cdot t_i^2 + d_i \cdot t_i^3 \), and thus, more explicitly, the equation to be solved becomes

\[ f(t_i) = a_i + b \cdot t_i + c_i \cdot t_i^2 + d_i \cdot t_i^3 - S_i = 0 \]

An equation corresponding to the above, is to be solved for each \( i = 1, 2, ..., N-1 \).

Since \( t_N = T \) is known from (3.24), good initial approximations for \( t_i \), \( i = 1, 2, ..., N-1 \) may be found:

\[ t_i^{(0)} = \frac{T}{N}, \quad i = 1, 2, ..., N-1 \]

Starting with an initial approximate root given by the above, the Newton-Raphson method generates, for each \( i \), a sequence of approximations \( \{ t_i^{(j)}, j = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \} \):
\[ t_i^{(j)} = t_i^{(j-1)} - \frac{f(t_i^{(j-1)})}{df(t_i^{(j-1)}} \), \quad j = 1,2, \ldots \]

The iteration continues until convergence is obtained. In practice, with a tolerance \( \varepsilon > 0 \) specified, the Newton-Raphson iteration continues for each \( i \) until one of the following convergence criteria is met:

\[
\left| t_i^{(j)} - t_i^{(j-1)} \right| < \varepsilon \\
\left| \frac{t_i^{(j)} - t_i^{(j-1)}}{t_i^{(j)}} \right| < \varepsilon, \quad t_i^{(j)} \neq 0 \\
\text{or } f(t_i^{(j)}) < \varepsilon
\]

### 3.1.2 Cubic spline representations for \( X(t) \) and \( Y(t) \)

With the time interval \([0, T]\) during which the curve is executed determined (see objective (a) Section 3.1), and the nodal times \( t_i, \quad i = 1,2, \ldots, N-1 \) known, time parametric curves \( X(t) \) and \( Y(t) = [0, T] \) interpolating the nodal points \((x_i, y_i)\) (see objective (b) Section 3.1), can be determined.

Since a unique time instant \( t_i \in [0, T] \) is associated with each nodal point \((x_i, y_i), \quad i = 0,1, \ldots, N \) and since \( 0 = t_0 < t_1 < \ldots < t_N = T \), separate cubic spline interpolations \( X(t) \) and \( Y(t) \) may be fitted to the respective nodal point sets, \((x_i, t_i)\) and \((y_i, t_i)\).

According to Burden and Faires [55] cubic spline interpolation, which fits cubic polynomials between each successive pair of nodes, is the most common piecewise polynomial approximation. Based on their definition, the cubic spline interpolant \( X(t) \), is a function that satisfies the following conditions:

- \( X(t) \) is a cubic polynomial, denoted \( X_i(t) \), on subinterval \([t_i, t_{i+1}]\) for each \( i = 0,1, \ldots, N-1 \)
- \( X(t_i) = x_i \) for each \( i = 0,1, \ldots, N \)
- \( X_i(t_i) = X_i(t_{i+1}) \) for each \( i = 0,1, \ldots, N-2 \)
- \( \dot{X}_i(t_i) = \dot{X}_i(t_{i+1}) \) for each \( i = 0,1, \ldots, N-2 \)
- \( \ddot{X}_i(t_i) = \ddot{X}_i(t_{i+1}) \) for each \( i = 0,1, \ldots, N-2 \)

One of the following set of boundary conditions is satisfied:

- \( \ddot{X}(t_0) = \ddot{X}_x(t_N) = 0 \) (free or natural boundary)
- or \( \ddot{X}(t_0) = \ddot{x}_0 \) and \( \ddot{X}(t_N) = \ddot{x}_N \) (clamped boundary)
When the free boundary conditions are prescribed, the spline is called a natural spline, and its form approximates the shape that a long flexible rod would assume if forced to go through each of the nodal points.

For the interpolants \( X(t) \) and \( Y(t) \) to be constructed here, however, clamped boundary conditions are used, since they contain more information about the respective functions, and therefore lead to more accurate approximations.

Assume for the moment that the derivatives at the end points \( (x_0, \dot{x}_0) \) are accurately known. To construct the cubic spline interpolant for \( x \) as a function of \( t \), the conditions listed above are applied to the cubic polynomials of the following form:

\[
X_i(t) = a_{x_i} + b_{x_i}(t - t_i) + c_{x_i}(t - t_i)^2 + d_{x_i}(t - t_i)^3, \quad i = 0, 1, ..., N - 1 \quad (3.26)
\]

The unknown coefficients \( a_{x_i}, b_{x_i}, c_{x_i}, \) and \( d_{x_i}, \), \( i = 0, 1, ..., N - 1 \), may easily be determined as shown in [55].

If not explicitly known, the initial derivative \( \dot{x}_0 \) may be accurately approximated using Taylor expansions for \( x_1, x_2, x_3, \) and \( x_4 \) about \( t_0 \):

\[
x_1 = x_0 + \Delta t_1 \dot{x}_0 + \frac{(\Delta t_1)^2}{2!} \ddot{x}_0 + \frac{(\Delta t_1)^3}{3!} \dddot{x}_0 + \frac{(\Delta t_1)^4}{4!} \ddddot{x}_0 + O((\Delta t_1)^5)
\]

\[
x_2 = x_0 + \Delta t_2 \dot{x}_0 + \frac{(\Delta t_2)^2}{2!} \ddot{x}_0 + \frac{(\Delta t_2)^3}{3!} \dddot{x}_0 + \frac{(\Delta t_2)^4}{4!} \ddddot{x}_0 + O((\Delta t_2)^5)
\]

\[
x_3 = x_0 + \Delta t_3 \dot{x}_0 + \frac{(\Delta t_3)^2}{2!} \ddot{x}_0 + \frac{(\Delta t_3)^3}{3!} \dddot{x}_0 + \frac{(\Delta t_3)^4}{4!} \ddddot{x}_0 + O((\Delta t_3)^5)
\]

\[
x_4 = x_0 + \Delta t_4 \dot{x}_0 + \frac{(\Delta t_4)^2}{2!} \ddot{x}_0 + \frac{(\Delta t_4)^3}{3!} \dddot{x}_0 + \frac{(\Delta t_4)^4}{4!} \ddddot{x}_0 + O((\Delta t_4)^5)
\]

where \( x_i \) corresponds to \( x(t_i) \) and \( \Delta t_i = t_i - t_0 \), \( i = 1, 2, 3, 4 \). Ignoring the higher order terms in the above expressions leads to the following set of linear equations:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
   x_1 - x_0 \\
   x_2 - x_0 \\
   x_3 - x_0 \\
   x_4 - x_0
\end{bmatrix}
= \begin{bmatrix}
   \Delta t_1 \\
   \Delta t_2 \\
   \Delta t_3 \\
   \Delta t_4
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
   \frac{(\Delta t_1)^2}{2} \\
   \frac{(\Delta t_2)^2}{2} \\
   \frac{(\Delta t_3)^2}{2} \\
   \frac{(\Delta t_4)^2}{2}
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
   \frac{(\Delta t_1)^3}{6} \\
   \frac{(\Delta t_2)^3}{6} \\
   \frac{(\Delta t_3)^3}{6} \\
   \frac{(\Delta t_4)^3}{6}
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
   \frac{(\Delta t_1)^4}{24} \\
   \frac{(\Delta t_2)^4}{24} \\
   \frac{(\Delta t_3)^4}{24} \\
   \frac{(\Delta t_4)^4}{24}
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
   \dot{x}_0 \\
   \dot{x}_0 \\
   \dot{x}_0 \\
   \dot{x}_0
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Expression (3.27) is a linear system of the form \( Ax = b \), and can be solved directly using a scheme such as LU-factorization [55]. The solution vector \( x \) contains the sought after initial derivative \( \dot{x}_0 \).
The final derivative $\dot{x}_N$ may be obtained in a similar manner, where the set of linear equations in matrix form is given by:

$$
\begin{bmatrix}
-\Delta t_1 & (\Delta t_1)^2 & - (\Delta t_1)^3 & (\Delta t_1)^4 \\
-\Delta t_2 & (\Delta t_2)^2 & - (\Delta t_2)^3 & (\Delta t_2)^4 \\
-\Delta t_3 & (\Delta t_3)^2 & - (\Delta t_3)^3 & (\Delta t_3)^4 \\
-\Delta t_4 & (\Delta t_4)^2 & - (\Delta t_4)^3 & (\Delta t_4)^4
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
\dot{x}_1 \\
\dot{x}_2 \\
\dot{x}_3 \\
\dot{x}_N
\end{bmatrix}
= \begin{bmatrix}
x_{N+1} - x_N \\
x_{N+2} - x_N \\
x_{N+3} - x_N \\
x_{N+4} - x_N
\end{bmatrix}
$$

with $\Delta t_i = t_i - t_{i-1}$, $i = 1, 2, 3, 4$.

The advantage of using a cubic spline interpolation for $X(t)$, $t \in [0, T]$ is that each constituent cubic polynomial $X_i(t)$ involves four coefficients, so there is sufficient flexibility in the cubic spline procedure to ensure that the interpolant is not only continuously differentiable, but also has a continuous second derivative over the whole interval $[0, T]$ (see [55]).

Once $a_{X_i}$, $b_{X_i}$, $c_{X_i}$, and $d_{X_i}$, $i = 0, 1, \ldots, N-1$ (see (3.26)) are determined, $X(t)$ and $\dot{X}(t)$ are given by:

$$
\dot{X}_i(t) = b_{X_i} + 2c_{X_i}(t - t_i) + 3d_{X_i}(t - t_i)^2, \quad i = 0, 1, \ldots, N-1 \quad (3.29)
$$

$$
\ddot{X}_i(t) = 2c_{X_i} + 6d_{X_i}(t - t_i), \quad i = 0, 1, \ldots, N-1 \quad (3.30)
$$

which are continuous functions over the interval $[0, T]$ (see objective (c) Section 3.1).

It follows that $Y(t)$, $\dot{Y}(t)$ and $\ddot{Y}(t)$ can be found in a similar manner.

### 3.2 Practical problem of determining $\frac{dy}{dx}$ at $P_o$ and $P_N$

In general the set of given nodal points $\{P_i = (x_i, y_i), i = 0, 1, \ldots, N\}$ may represent a curve for which no explicit analytical expression exists, and therefore the exact initial and final gradients ($\frac{dy}{dx}$ at $P_o$ and $P_N$) will not be known. In this case approximations to these gradients with respect to $x$ may be determined using Taylor expansions in an analogous manner as done for the time derivatives $\dot{x}_0$ and $\dot{x}_N$ in Section 3.1.2 (see expressions (3.27) and (3.28)).
In Section 3.1.1.1 it is apparent that the nodal points representing a curve must be chosen in such a way that certain conditions are satisfied (see Table 3.1 and Table 3.3). These conditions ensure that each consecutive cubic arc can be expressed as a function of either \( x \) or \( y \).

Returning to the illustrative example curve of Figure 3.3, it was shown that 5 nodal points along the curve are adequate in terms of the conditions listed in Table 3.1 and Table 3.3, provided that the exact initial and final gradients are known. However, if the exact values of the initial and final gradients are not known, the nodal points should be specified in such a way that sufficiently accurate approximations for these gradients may be calculated.

Figure 3.7 shows the same illustrative example curve, but with four additional nodal points. An approximate value for the initial gradient (\( \frac{dy}{dx} \) at \( P_0 \), i.e. \( y'_0 \)) may then be determined using the following Taylor expansions:

\[
\begin{align*}
y_1 &= y_0 + \Delta x_1 y'_0 + \frac{(\Delta x_1)^2}{2!} y''_0 + \frac{(\Delta x_1)^3}{3!} y'''_0 + O((\Delta x_1)^4) \\
y_2 &= y_0 + \Delta x_2 y'_0 + \frac{(\Delta x_2)^2}{2!} y''_0 + \frac{(\Delta x_2)^3}{3!} y'''_0 + O((\Delta x_2)^4) \\
y_3 &= y_0 + \Delta x_3 y'_0 + \frac{(\Delta x_3)^2}{2!} y''_0 + \frac{(\Delta x_3)^3}{3!} y'''_0 + O((\Delta x_3)^4)
\end{align*}
\]

The clustered distribution of nodal points \( P_0, P_1, P_2, \) and \( P_3 \) shown in Figure 3.7 is justified considering the fact that the fourth order error term in the above Taylor expansions becomes smaller using smaller step sizes \( \Delta x_1, \Delta x_2, \) and \( \Delta x_3 \). Neglecting these error terms an approximate initial gradient \( y'_0 \) is obtained by solving the following linear system:
Similarly, an approximate final gradient $y'_N$ may be obtained by solving the linear system:

$$
\begin{bmatrix}
  y_{N-1} - y_N \\
  y_{N-2} - y_N \\
  y_{N-3} - y_N \\
\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}
  -\Delta x_1 & -\frac{(\Delta x_1)^2}{4} & -\frac{(\Delta x_1)^3}{6} \\
  -\Delta x_2 & -\frac{(\Delta x_2)^2}{4} & -\frac{(\Delta x_2)^3}{6} \\
  -\Delta x_3 & -\frac{(\Delta x_3)^2}{4} & -\frac{(\Delta x_3)^3}{6} \\
\end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix}
  y'_N \\
  y''_N \\
  y'''_N \\
\end{bmatrix}
$$

with $\Delta x_i = x_N - x_{N-i}$, $i = 1, 2, 3$.

Depending on the particular circumstances, approximations for $\frac{dx}{dy}$ at $P_o$ and $P_N$ may be determined in a similar manner using Taylor expansions. The choice between determining $\frac{dy}{dx}$ or $\frac{dx}{dy}$ at $P_o$ and $P_N$ depends on which of the following conditions are satisfied, and which are violated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition 4(a):</th>
<th>$x_3 &gt; x_2 &gt; x_1 &gt; x_0$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Condition 4(b):</td>
<td>$x_0 &gt; x_1 &gt; x_2 &gt; x_3$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition 4(c):</td>
<td>$x_{N-3} &gt; x_{N-2} &gt; x_{N-1} &gt; x_N$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition 4(d):</td>
<td>$x_N &gt; x_{N-1} &gt; x_{N-2} &gt; x_{N-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition 5(a):</td>
<td>$y_3 &gt; y_2 &gt; y_1 &gt; y_0$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition 5(b):</td>
<td>$y_0 &gt; y_1 &gt; y_2 &gt; y_3$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition 5(c):</td>
<td>$y_{N-3} &gt; y_{N-2} &gt; y_{N-1} &gt; y_N$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition 5(d):</td>
<td>$y_N &gt; y_{N-1} &gt; y_{N-2} &gt; y_{N-3}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 3.5**

Since four node points are involved in each condition, the clustered distributions of the nodal points $P_o$, $P_1$, $P_2$ and $P_3$, as well as $P_5$, $P_6$, $P_7$ and $P_8$ in Figure 3.7 are further justified considering the requirement that at least two of the conditions listed in Table 3.5 must be satisfied for any set of nodal points. In particular, at least one of conditions 4(a), 4(b), 5(a) or 5(b), and one of conditions 4(c), 4(d), 5(c) or 5(d) must be satisfied for the purposes of determining the sought after initial and final gradients.
For nodal points \( P_0, P_1, P_2 \) and \( P_3 \) shown in Figure 3.7 it is clear that both conditions 4(a) and 5(a) are satisfied, implying that either \( \frac{dy}{dx} \) or \( \frac{dx}{dy} \) can be determined at \( P_0 \). Similarly for nodal points \( P_5, P_6, P_7 \), both conditions 4(c) and 5(c) are satisfied, implying that either \( \frac{dy}{dx} \) or \( \frac{dx}{dy} \) can be determined at \( P_N = P_g \). In these eventualities, the appropriate choice is made by testing which of the additional conditions listed in Table 3.6 are satisfied.

| Condition 6(a): | \( |x_3 - x_0| \geq |y_3 - y_0| \) |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| Condition 6(b): | \( |x_3 - x_0| < |y_3 - y_0| \) |
| Condition 7(a): | \( |x_N - x_{N-3}| \geq |y_N - y_{N-3}| \) |
| Condition 7(b): | \( |x_N - x_{N-3}| < |y_N - y_{N-3}| \) |

Table 3.6

For example, since for nodes \( P_0 \) and \( P_3 \) shown in Figure 3.7, condition 6(a) is satisfied, the obvious choice is to determine \( \frac{dy}{dx} \) at node \( P_0 \). Similarly, since condition 7(a) is satisfied for nodes \( P_5 \) and \( P_g \), \( \frac{dy}{dx} \) is to be determined at node \( P_N = P_g \).

The following truth table shows how the conditions from Table 3.5 and Table 3.6 determine the form of the gradient to be used at node \( P_0 \). As before, the rows show different combinations of satisfied and violated conditions, where a 1 indicates that the specific condition is satisfied, and a 0 that it is violated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition 4(a)</th>
<th>Condition 4(b)</th>
<th>Condition 5(a)</th>
<th>Condition 5(b)</th>
<th>Condition 6(a)</th>
<th>Condition 6(b)</th>
<th>Gradient at ( P_0 )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \frac{dy}{dx} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \frac{dy}{dx} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \frac{dx}{dy} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \frac{dx}{dy} )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 3 105
A similar truth table may be drawn up showing how the different combinations of conditions determine the form of the gradient to be used at $P_N$.

Of course, with $\frac{dy}{dx}$ (or $\frac{dx}{dy}$) determined at nodes $P_0$ and $P_N$ using the above strategy, $\frac{dx}{dy}$ (or $\frac{dy}{dx}$) at nodes $P_i$ and $P_N$ is simply given by the reciprocal relationship:

$$\frac{dx(y_i)}{dy} = \left[ \frac{dy(x_i)}{dx} \right]^{-1} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{dy(x_i)}{dx} = \left[ \frac{dx(y_i)}{dy} \right]^{-1} \quad \text{for } i = 1, N$$
3.3 Synthesis of more general curves

Figure 3.8: General curve where the prescribed speed is achieved.

Section 3.1.1.3 deals with the simplified situation of tangential acceleration along the prescribed curve until a specified tangential speed $v^*$ is achieved at time $t_N = T$. A more realistic example is shown in Figure 3.8 where the motion is executed in three segments: tangential acceleration along curve $C_1$, constant tangential speed along curve $C_2$, and tangential deceleration along curve $C_3$. The set of nodal points associated with the general curve of Figure 3.8 is $\{P_i = (x_i, y_i), i = 0, 1, ..., N_1, ..., N_2, ..., N_3\}$.

This Section proposes a methodology by means of which node numbers $N_1$ and $N_2$ may automatically be assigned, given the prescribed constant tangential speed $v^*$ along $C_2$ and the maximum allowable tangential acceleration $\ddot{s}_{ALLOW}$.

In what follows “speed” and “acceleration” refer to tangential speed and tangential acceleration, unless otherwise specified.

3.3.1 Linear segment with cubic blends

Assume that node numbers $N_1$ and $N_2$ are given. Node number $N_3$ is automatically known, since it is the final node in the specified data series. Path lengths $S_1$, $S_2$ and $S_3$, corresponding to the respective curves $C_1$, $C_2$ and $C_3$, may then be determined by following the procedure outlined in Sections 3.1.1.1 and 3.1.1.2.
The acceleration curve $C_i$ in Figure 3.8, corresponds to the situation already discussed in Section 3.1.1.3, i.e. a gradual increase in speed is required over the time interval $t \in [0, T_j]$, such that the prescribed speed $v^*$ is attained at time $T_j$.

For curve $C_i$ the distance along curve $s_i$ at any instant $t$ is represented by the cubic polynomial in time (see expression (3.15)):

$$s_i(t) = a_{si} + b_{si} t + c_{si} t^2 + d_{si} t^3, \quad t \in [0, T_j]$$

(3.33)

with quadratic expression $\dot{s}_i(t) = b_{si} + 2c_{si} t + 3d_{si} t^2$, for the speed

(3.34)

and linear form $\ddot{s}_i(t) = 2c_{si} + 6d_{si} t$, for the acceleration

(3.35)

The motion along the acceleration curve $C_i$ is associated with boundary conditions that are similar to the ones given in Section 3.1.1.3; namely

$$s_i(0) = s_o \quad \text{(usually } s_o = 0)$$

$$s_i(T_j) = S_i$$

$$\dot{s}_i(0) = v_o \quad \text{(usually } v_o = 0)$$

$$\dot{s}_i(T_j) = v^*$$

$$\ddot{s}_i(T_j) = 0$$

The unknown coefficients $a_{si}, b_{si}, c_{si}$ and $d_{si}$, as well as $T_i$ are determined in exactly the same manner as explained in Section 3.1.1.1 (expressions (3.18) - (3.24)). With the coefficients and the time instant $T_i$ known, the nodal times $t_i, i = 1, 2, ..., N_i$ may be obtained using Newton's method (see Section 3.1.1.3).

Along the constant speed segment $C_{ii}$ in Figure 3.8 the distance $s_{ii}$ along the curve from nodal point $P_{ii}$ is given by the following linear relationship in time:

$$s_{ii}(t) = v^*(t - T_i), \quad t \in [T_i, T_{ii}]$$

(3.36)

For each node $P_i = (x_i, y_i), i = N_i + 1, N_i + 2, ..., N_{ii}$, the total path length $S_i$ from $P_o$ up to the specific node $P_i$ may be determined from (3.25):

$$S_i = \sum_{j=1}^{N_{ii}} s_j, \quad i = N_i + 1, N_i + 2, ..., N_{ii}$$

(3.37)

The corresponding nodal times $t_i, i = N_i + 1, N_i + 2, ..., N_{ii}$ then follow from (3.36):

$$t_i = \frac{S_i - S_{ii}}{v^*} + T_i, \quad i = N_i + 1, N_i + 2, ..., N_{ii}$$

(3.38)
For the final deceleration segment \( S_{III} \) in Figure 3.8, the distance along the curve \( s_{III} \) from nodal point \( P_{m} \) is also given by a cubic polynomial function of time:

\[
s_{III}(t) = a_{III} + b_{III}(t - T_{III}) + c_{III}(t - T_{III})^2 + d_{III}(t - T_{III})^3, \quad t \in [T_{III}, T_{f}]
\]

\[
\dot{s}_{III}(t) = b_{III} + 2c_{III}(t - T_{III}) + 3d_{III}(t - T_{III})^2
\]

\[
\ddot{s}_{III}(t) = 2c_{III} + 6d_{III}(t - T_{III})
\]

Since a decrease in speed is required along the deceleration segment \( S_{III} \), the following boundary conditions are enforced:

\[
s_{III}(T_{III}) = S_{III}
\]

\[
\dot{s}_{III}(T_{III}) = v^*
\]

\[
\ddot{s}_{III}(T_{III}) = 0
\]

\[
\dddot{s}_{III}(T_{III}) = 0
\]

from which the coefficients \( a_{III} \), \( b_{III} \), \( c_{III} \), \( d_{III} \) and the final time instant \( T_{III} \) can be determined:

\[
s_{III}(T_{III}) = a_{III} = S_{III}
\]

\[
\dot{s}_{III}(T_{III}) = b_{III} = v^*
\]

\[
\ddot{s}_{III}(T_{III}) = 2c_{III} = 0
\]

\[
\dddot{s}_{III}(T_{III}) = 6d_{III} = 0
\]

and with \( b_{III} = v^* \) it follows from (3.43):

\[
d_{III} = \frac{-v^*}{3(T_{III} - T_{f})^2}
\]

and substituting (3.44) into (3.42):

\[
T_{III} = \frac{3(S_{III} - S_{f})}{2v^*} + T_{III}
\]

Newton’s method is then used to determine the corresponding nodal times \( t_i, \ i = N_{II} + 1, N_{II} + 2, ..., N_{III} \) in the manner already described in Section 3.1.1.3.

It follows that the motion, described in terms of the distance \( s(t) \) along the general curve shown in Figure 3.8, is a linear segment with cubic blends (LSCB), since the cubic motions along curves \( C_i \) and
C_{\text{III}} are merged or blended with the constant velocity motion along curve C_{\text{II}} at the respective blend times $T_1$ and $T_\text{II}$ as shown in Figure 3.9 (see [60]).

![Figure 3.9: Linear segment with cubic blends (LSCB).](image)

Blend time $T_1$ is given by (3.24):

$$T_1 = \frac{3(S_1 - s_o)}{v_o + 2v'}$$

which reduces to $T_1 = \frac{3S_1}{2v'}$ with $s_o = 0$ and $v_o = 0$.

Similarly, blend time $T_{\text{II}}$ is given by (3.45):

$$T_{\text{III}} - T_{\text{II}} = \frac{3(S_{\text{III}} - S_{\text{II}})}{2v'}$$

The latter two equations indicate that if the nodal points $N_1$ and $N_{\text{II}}$ are chosen in such a way that $S_{\text{III}} - S_{\text{II}} = S_1$, then time spans $(T_1 - 0)$ and $(T_{\text{III}} - T_{\text{II}})$ are equal. In this case the LSCB, as shown in Figure 3.9, is "centro-symmetric" with respect to the midpoint $\left[ \frac{T_{\text{III}} + S_{\text{III}}}{2}, \frac{S_{\text{III}}}{2} \right]$ (see [60]).

Another important and desirable feature of the proposed LSCB motion, is the fact that the corresponding speed and acceleration curves are continuous as depicted in Figure 3.10.
The initial acceleration $\ddot{s}_i(0)$ is obtained by substituting (3.46) into (3.23) giving

$$c_{s1} = \frac{(v' - v_0)(v_0 + 2v')}{3(S_1 - s_0)}$$

which, after substituting into (3.35) yields

$$\ddot{s}(0)_1 = 2c_d = \frac{2(v' - v_0)(v_0 + 2v')}{3(S_1 - s_0)}$$

Expression (3.48) simplifies further if $v_0 = 0$ and $s_0 = 0$, as is usually the case, to give

$$\ddot{s}_i(0) = \frac{4(v')^2}{3S_1}$$

Expression (3.48) simplifies further if $v_0 = 0$ and $s_0 = 0$, as is usually the case, to give

$$\ddot{s}_i(0) = \frac{4(v')^2}{3S_1}$$

Further, by substituting $d_{iii} = \frac{-v'}{3(T_{iii} - T_{ii})}$ as well as (3.47) into (3.41), the final acceleration is given by

$$\ddot{s}_m(T_{iii})$$

Figure 3.10: LSCB motion with its accompanying speed and acceleration curves.
If \( S_{III} - S_{II} = S_1 \), the magnitude of the initial acceleration \( \ddot{s}_i(0) \) is equal to the magnitude of the final acceleration \( \ddot{s}_{III}(T_{III}) \) due to the symmetry that exists in this case (compare expressions (3.49) and (3.50)). It is of particular interest to note that for this symmetrical situation, the magnitudes of the accelerations at the initial and final times are not only equal but correspond to the maximum acceleration magnitude that occurs along the total curve.

### 3.3.2 Treatment of constraint on acceleration

The practical requirement that the prescribed motion is to be executed as fast as possible, is usually subject to a prescribed maximum allowable acceleration magnitude \( \ddot{s}_{\text{ALLOW}} \). A procedure is now described that may be used to select appropriate node numbers \( N_1 \) and \( N_{III} \) such that the following specific acceleration constraints are not violated:

\[
\ddot{s}_i(0) \leq \ddot{s}_{\text{ALLOW}} \tag{3.51}
\]

\[
|\ddot{s}_{III}(T_{III})| \leq \ddot{s}_{\text{ALLOW}} \tag{3.52}
\]

Since by (3.35) and (3.41) the acceleration along both \( C_1 \) and \( C_{III} \) vary linearly with time, it follows that if the specific constraints (3.51) and (3.52) are satisfied, that the constraint on the acceleration is also satisfied at each instant along the whole path.

As before, for each node \( P_i = (x_i, y_i), \ i = 0, 1, ..., N_{III} \), the total path length up to the specific node may be determined using expression (3.25). A special nodal point \( N_{\text{MID}} \), corresponding to a point approximately halfway along the total curve (i.e. for which \( S_{N_{\text{mid}}} \approx \frac{S_{III}}{2} \)) can be identified using the following criterion:

\[
S_{\text{MID}} \leq \frac{S_{III}}{2} < S_{\text{MID-1}} \tag{3.53}
\]

As a first iteration in finding the appropriate choices for nodes \( N_1 \) and \( N_{III} \), assume that nodes \( N_1 \) and \( N_{III} \) coincide with node \( N_{\text{MID}} \) as shown in Figure 3.11.
From (3.53) it follows that \( S_{\text{iii}} - S_{\text{mid}} \geq S_{\text{mid}} \), and with nodes \( N_i \) and \( N_{\text{ii}} \) coinciding with node \( N_{\text{mid}} \), it further follows that \( S_{\text{iii}} - S_{\text{ii}} \geq S_i \), which, when substituted into (3.49) and (3.50), gives

\[ |\ddot{s}_{\text{iii}}(T_{\text{iii}})| \leq \ddot{s}_i(0) \tag{3.54} \]

Consequently, for the situation depicted in Figure 3.11, if the initial acceleration \( \ddot{s}_i(0) \) satisfies constraint (3.51), the final acceleration \( \ddot{s}_{\text{iii}}(T_{\text{iii}}) \) will also satisfy constraint (3.52) and, indeed, the constraint on the magnitude of the acceleration will be satisfied at each instant along the total curve.

### 3.3.2.1 Attainment of central speed \( v^* \)

If the initial acceleration for the situation shown in Figure 3.11 satisfies constraint (3.51), the desired central speed \( v^* \) may be reached at node \( N_{\text{mid}} \). For practical purposes the ideal objectives are, however:

1. to attain the desired central speed \( v^* \) in the shortest possible time \( T_i \) without exceeding the allowable maximum acceleration magnitude \( \ddot{s}_{\text{allow}} \), and
2. to maintain the desired speed \( v^* \) for the longest possible time span \( (T_{\text{ii}} - T_i) \) provided that, over the final time interval \( [T_{\text{ii}}, T_{\text{iii}}] \), the maximum deceleration magnitude does not exceed the allowable magnitude \( \ddot{s}_{\text{allow}} \).

With reference to objective 1 above, expressions (3.46) and (3.48) respectively indicate that for a specific speed \( v^* \), a shorter path length \( S_i \) will result in a shorter time \( T_i \) and a larger initial acceleration \( \ddot{s}_i(0) \). By shifting, for example, node \( N_i \) to coincide with node \( N_{\text{mid}} - 1 \) the associated path length \( S_i \) and corresponding time \( T_i \) will be reduced, while the associated initial acceleration \( \ddot{s}_i(0) \) will become larger. This increased initial acceleration is then tested against constraint (3.51), and if the constraint is
still satisfied, node $N_i$ is shifted further to coincide with node $N_{\text{MID}} - 2$. These integer shifts are continued until, after $p$ integer shifts, the choice of node $N_i$, coinciding with node $N_{\text{MID}} - p$, is such that the initial acceleration satisfies constraint (3.51), while the choice $N_i = N_{\text{MID}} - (p + 1)$ violates the constraint.

With regard to objective 2, inspection of expressions (3.47) and (3.50), indicates that a decrease in the path length $(S_{\text{III}} - S_{\text{II}})$ will result in a shorter time span $(T_{\text{III}} - T_{\text{II}})$, and a larger final acceleration magnitude $|\dot{s}_{\text{III}}(T_{\text{III}})|$. For example, if node $N_{\text{II}}$ is shifted to coincide with node $N_{\text{MID}} + 1$ and thus shortens the path length $(S_{\text{III}} - S_{\text{II}})$ and the time span $(T_{\text{III}} - T_{\text{II}})$, it will result in a larger final acceleration magnitude $|\dot{s}_{\text{III}}(T_{\text{III}})|$. If the larger $|\dot{s}_{\text{III}}(T_{\text{III}})|$ satisfies constraint (3.52), node $N_{\text{II}}$ may be shifted further to coincide with node $N_{\text{MID}} + 2$, etc. These integer shifts may be continued until, after $q$ shifts, node $N_{\text{II}}$, coinciding with node $N_{\text{MID}} + q$ is such that the final acceleration magnitude $|\dot{s}_{\text{III}}(T_{\text{III}})|$ satisfies constraint (3.52), while the choice $N_{\text{II}} = N_{\text{MID}} + (q + 1)$ violates the constraint.

### 3.3.2.2 Violation of maximum allowable acceleration

If the initial acceleration, for the situation depicted in Figure 3.11 with specified central velocity $v^*$, violates constraint (3.51), a different strategy is proposed which ensures that the maximum allowable acceleration is not exceeded. For this case, the motion along the curve shown in Figure 3.11, consists of two blended cubic polynomials in time. The blend time is $T_{\text{MID}}$ as shown in Figure 3.12:

![Figure 3.12: Blended cubic polynomials.](image-url)
More specifically, the two objectives set in this case are:
1. to accelerate as fast as possible along curve $C_1$ without violating constraint (3.51), and
2. to decelerate as fast as possible along curve $C_{il}$ without violating constraint (3.52).

Objective 1 implies a different set of boundary conditions for determining the coefficients of the cubic polynomial function representing the path length along curve $C_1$ (see expression (3.33)). These new boundary conditions are

$$s_i(0) = s_o \quad \text{(usually } s_o = 0)$$

$$s_i(T_{mid}) = S_{mid}$$

$$\dot{s}_i(0) = v_o \quad \text{(usually } v_o = 0)$$

$$\ddot{s}_i(0) = \ddot{s}_{allow}$$

$$\ddot{s}_i(T_{mid}) = 0$$

from which $a_{si}$, $b_{si}$, $c_{si}$, $d_{si}$, and $T_{mid}$ may be determined as follow:

$$s_i(0) = a_{si} = s_o$$

$$\dot{s}_i(0) = b_{si} = v_o$$

$$\ddot{s}_i(0) = \ddot{s}_{allow} = 2c_{si}$$

and therefore $c_{si} = \frac{\ddot{s}_{allow}}{2}$

$$s_i(T_{mid}) = S_{mid} = a_{si} + b_{si} T_{mid} + c_{si} (T_{mid})^2 + d_{si} (T_{mid})^3$$

(3.55)

$$\ddot{s}_i(T_{mid}) = 0 = 2c_{si} + 6d_{si} T_{mid}$$

(3.56)

and thus

$$d_{si} = -\frac{\ddot{s}_{allow}}{6T_{mid}}$$

(3.57)

Substituting (3.57) into (3.55):

$$s_i(T_{mid}) = S_{mid} = s_o + v_o T_{mid} + \frac{\ddot{s}_{allow}}{3} (T_{mid})^2$$

$$- v_o \pm \sqrt{v_o^2 - 4 \left(\frac{\ddot{s}_{allow}}{3}\right) (s_o - S_{mid})}$$

which gives $T_{mid} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{3S_{mid}}{\ddot{s}_{allow}} \right)$

and which reduces to

$$T_{mid} = \pm \frac{3S_{mid}}{\ddot{s}_{allow}}$$

(3.58)

if $s_o = 0$ and $v_o = 0$. 

Chapter 3 115
The positive root gives the sought after time instant $T_{\text{MID}}$.

From (3.34) and substituting the values of the coefficients determined above, the speed at node $N_{\text{MID}}$ is

$$v_{\text{MID}} = \dot{s}_{\text{I}}(T_{\text{MID}}) = v_0 + \frac{\dot{s}_{\text{ALLOW}}}{2} T_{\text{MID}}$$

which reduces to

$$v_{\text{MID}} = \dot{s}_{\text{I}}(T_{\text{MID}}) = \frac{\sqrt{3S_{\text{MID}} \dot{s}_{\text{ALLOW}}}}{2}$$

(3.59)

if $s_0 = 0$ and $v_0 = 0$.

The cubic polynomial function of time representing the deceleration segment $C_{\text{III}}$ in Figure 3.11 is given by expression (3.39). The unknown coefficients $a_{\text{III}}$, $b_{\text{III}}$, $c_{\text{III}}$ and $d_{\text{III}}$ as well as $T_{\text{III}}$ are solved for by using similar boundary conditions as before:

$$s_{\text{III}}(T_{\text{II}}) = S_{\text{MID}}$$
$$s_{\text{III}}(T_{\text{III}}) = S_{\text{III}}$$
$$\dot{s}_{\text{III}}(T_{\text{II}}) = v_{\text{MID}}$$
$$\dot{s}_{\text{III}}(T_{\text{III}}) = 0$$
$$\ddot{s}_{\text{III}}(T_{\text{II}}) = 0$$

Substituting these conditions in the corresponding general expressions (3.39), (3.40) and (3.41) for $s$, $\dot{s}$ and $\ddot{s}$, and following the identical steps represented by equations (3.42) to (3.45) finally yields:

$$a_{\text{III}} = S_{\text{MID}}$$
$$b_{\text{III}} = v_{\text{MID}}$$
$$c_{\text{III}} = 0$$
$$d_{\text{III}} = \frac{-v_{\text{MID}}}{3(T_{\text{III}} - T_{\text{MID}})^2}$$

and $T_{\text{III}} = \frac{3(S_{\text{III}} - S_{\text{MID}})}{2v_{\text{MID}}} + T_{\text{MID}}$

As with the LSCB motion (see Figure 3.10), the blended cubic polynomials also result in continuous speed and acceleration curves as shown in Figure 3.13.
From the above acceleration curve, it is clear that the initial acceleration is equal to the allowable maximum acceleration, i.e. $\ddot{s}_i(0) = \ddot{s}_{\text{ALLOW}}$. Since the final acceleration magnitude $|\ddot{s}_i(T_m)|$ is either smaller than or equal to the initial acceleration magnitude $\ddot{s}_i(0)$ (see expression (3.54)), $|\ddot{s}_i(T_m)|$ automatically satisfies acceleration constraint (3.52).

### 3.4 Incorporation of an orientation angle $\phi$.

For certain applications of planar motion, the time parametric curves $X(t)$ and $Y(t)$ that interpolate the given set of nodal points $\{P_i = (x_i, y_i), i = 0, 1, ..., N\}$, are insufficient for the control of the particular mechanism, e.g. for a planar mechanism where the end-effector is to be orientated in a prescribed manner with respect to the tangent of the given path.
As an example, consider the situation where the orientation of the end-effector is to be exactly tangential to the curve, as the working point on the end-effector progresses along the prescribed curve. The gradient angle $\theta$ at any point along the curve is given by

$$\tan \theta = \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dp_x(x)}{dx} \text{ or } \left[ \frac{dp_y(y)}{dy} \right]^{-1}$$

(3.60)

Another convenient form of expression (3.60) is

$$\tan \theta = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{dy}{dt} \\ \frac{dx}{dt} \end{bmatrix} \approx \frac{\dot{Y}(t)}{\dot{X}(t)}$$

(3.61)

With the time parametric curves $X(t)$ and $Y(t)$ known, the respective derivatives $\dot{X}(t)$ and $\dot{Y}(t)$ are also known. Expression (3.61) may therefore be evaluated at nodal points $P_i$, $i = 0, 1, ..., N$ to find the corresponding values of $\theta_i$, $i = 0, 1, ..., N$. As will be described below, the actual orientation angle $\phi$ of the end-effector is related to the angle $\theta$ in a non-straightforward manner as the working point executes the path.

In computing $\theta$, care must be taken at nodes $P_0$ and $P_N$, since the respective speeds at these nodes are often zero, i.e. $s_x(0) = v_0 = 0$ and $s_{\infty}(T_m) = 0$. With this being the case, $X(0) = Y(0) = 0$ and $\dot{X}(T_m) = \dot{Y}(T_m) = 0$, and consequently expression (3.60) must be used instead of (3.61) to determine $\theta_0$ and $\theta_N$, since $\frac{dy}{dx}$ is known at nodes $P_0$ and $P_N$ (see Section 3.2).

Since the arc tan function, through which $\theta$ is determined via (3.60) or (3.61), only assumes values between $-90^\circ$ and $+90^\circ$, a special procedure must be adopted to determine the exact orientation angle $\phi$ as the working point on the orientated end-effector tangentially follows the prescribed curve.
Consider, for example, a prescribed circular curve as shown in Figure 3.14 with zero orientation angle $\phi$ at B. Starting at point A with $\theta$ and $\phi = -90^\circ$ and progressing counterclockwise (CCW) around the circular curve the gradient angle $\theta$ computed via (3.60) or (3.61) gradually increases with $\phi$ from $-90^\circ$ at A, to $0^\circ$ at B, to $+90^\circ$ at C. The CCW crossing of the x-axis at point C is however associated with a jump of $-180^\circ$ in the computed gradient angle $\theta$ although $\phi$ is still clearly increasing continuously. Progressing CCW along the lower half of the circle again sees a gradual increase in the gradient angle $\theta$ from $-90^\circ$ at C, to $0^\circ$ at D, to $+90^\circ$ at A, while $\phi$ continues to increase from $90^\circ$ to $270^\circ$ at A. At A where another jump of $-180^\circ$ occurs in the computed value $\theta$ if the X-axis is crossed CCW.

A similar pattern is recognized using a clockwise (CW) tracing of the circular curve. Starting at point A, the computed gradient angle $\theta$ gradually decreases from $+90^\circ$ at A, to $0^\circ$ at D, to $-90^\circ$ at C while $\phi$ decreases from $-90^\circ$ at A to $-270^\circ$ at C. The $+180^\circ$ jump that occurs in $\theta$ with the CW crossing of the x-axis at C is followed by another gradual decrease in the gradient angle starting from $+90^\circ$ at C, to $0^\circ$ at B, to $-90^\circ$ at A, while clearly $\phi$ continues to decrease from $-270^\circ$ at C to $-450^\circ$ at A.

The above-explained behavior of the gradient angle $\theta$ is used in establishing a procedure to determine the orientation angle $\phi$:

If the jump between any two successive gradient angles $\theta_{i-1}$ and $\theta_i$, $i = 1,2,\ldots,N$ is smaller than $-90^\circ$, i.e. $\theta_i - \theta_{i-1} \leq -90^\circ$, a CCW-counter $I_{ccw}$ is incremented. Further reflection indicates that $I_{ccw}$ should
also be incremented if $0 < \theta_i - \theta_{i-1} < 90^\circ$. Similarly if $\theta_i - \theta_{i-1} \geq 90^\circ$ or $-90^\circ < \theta_i - \theta_{i-1} < 0$, a CW-counter $I_{cw}$ is incremented. Using these counters, the true associated orientation angles $\phi_i$, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, N$ are given by

\begin{align*}
\phi_i &= \theta_i + (I_{cw})(180^\circ) \\
(3.62)
\end{align*}

if $0 < \theta_i - \theta_{i-1} < 90^\circ$, or $\theta_i - \theta_{i-1} \leq -90^\circ$, and

\begin{align*}
\phi_i &= \theta_i - (I_{cw})(180^\circ) \\
(3.63)
\end{align*}

if $-90^\circ < \theta_i - \theta_{i-1} < 0$, or $\theta_i - \theta_{i-1} \geq 90^\circ$

In general expressions (3.62) and (3.63) respectively are given by:

\begin{align*}
\phi_i &= \theta_i + (I_{cw})(180^\circ) + \phi_{offset} \\
(3.64)
\end{align*}

if $0 < \theta_i - \theta_{i-1} < 90^\circ$, or $\theta_i - \theta_{i-1} \leq -90^\circ$, and

\begin{align*}
\phi_i &= \theta_i - (I_{cw})(180^\circ) + \phi_{offset} \\
(3.65)
\end{align*}

if $-90^\circ < \theta_i - \theta_{i-1} < 0$, or $\theta_i - \theta_{i-1} \geq 90^\circ$

The term $\phi_{offset}$ in expressions (3.64) and (3.65) is defined as the offset orientation angle of the end-effector measured in a CCW convention from the tangent to the prescribed path at the point of contact as shown in Figure 3.15.

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{figure3.15.png}
\caption{Circular prescribed curve with an angular offset added to the end-effector orientation.}
\end{figure}

Since the time instants $t_i$, $i = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N$ are known (see Section 3.1.1.3), a cubic spline representation $\Phi(t)$ may now be determined in exactly the same way as the cubic spline representations $X(t)$ and
Y(t) (see Section 3.1.2). With the cubic spline Φ(t) known, the continuous first and second derivatives \( \dot{\Phi}(t) \) and \( \ddot{\Phi}(t) \) follow automatically.

Any prescribed path may also be traced with the end-effector posed in a specified fixed orientation \( \phi_{\text{fix}} \), thus eliminating the need to determine the cubic spline \( \Phi(t) \) with its first and second derivatives \( \dot{\Phi}(t) \) and \( \ddot{\Phi}(t) \).

### 3.5 Test problems

The proposed trajectory planning methodology using Overlapping Cubic Arcs and (cubic) Splines (OCAS) is tested here on five different test functions. Appendix B contains a flow chart of the OCAS trajectory planning methodology.

#### 3.5.1 Parabolic test function

The first test function is a parabola, where \( y \) is the quadratic function of \( x \):

\[
y(x) = \frac{x^2}{2}
\]  

(3.66)

The accuracy of the approximating fit is dependent on the number and distribution of the given nodal points \( \{P_i = (x_i, y_i), i = 0, 1, \ldots, N\} \). The parabolic test function is approximated over the \( x \)-interval \( x \in [-2, 2] \) using 29 points spaced in such a way that they are more densely distributed at the beginning and end of the interval (see Figure 3.16). This is done to increase the accuracy of the calculation of the initial gradient \( \frac{dy}{dx} \) at \( P_0 \) and final gradient \( \frac{dy}{dx} \) at \( P_N \) as explained in Section 3.2. The nodal points are, for the obvious reason of greater accuracy, chosen more densely in neighborhood of the turning point where the greatest change in direction occurs.

![Figure 3.16: Nodal points used to approximate the parabolic test function.](image)

**Chapter 3** 121
In order to determine its accuracy, the fitted approximation is evaluated at chosen intermediate points between the pairs of consecutive nodes shown in Figure 3.16. Since the proposed OCAS-approach results in cubic spline representations for $X(t)$ and $Y(t)$ (see Section 3.1.2) over the time span between each pair of consecutive nodes, i.e. over $t_i - t_{i-1}$, $i = 1,2,\ldots,28$, each interval may be subdivided to obtain a specified number of equally spaced additional intermediate time instants. The respective cubic spline representations $X(t)$ and $Y(t)$ are then evaluated at the intermediate time instants to give the corresponding approximated intermediate $x$- and $y$-values along the curve. Each approximated intermediate $x$-value lies in the interval $x \in [-2,2]$, and may therefore be substituted into (3.66) to find the corresponding actual $y$-value. For each intermediate $x$-value, the $y$-error is taken as the absolute difference between the approximated $y$-value and the actual $y$-value.

Figure 3.17: OCAS-approximation of parabolic test function.

Figure 3.17 shows the $x$-$y$ profile obtained from the OCAS-approximation. Each consecutive time span $t_i - t_{i-1}$, $i = 1,2,\ldots,28$ is divided into 10 equal subintervals and the curve in Figure 3.17 therefore represents a plot at 281 division points. The maximum absolute $y$-error over this set of points is $4.470 \times 10^{-5}$ with an average error of $5.222 \times 10^{-6}$.

The trajectory planning along the parabolic profile was done by specifying a maximum allowable acceleration magnitude of 0.7 meter per second square, i.e. $\ddot{s}_{AL} = 0.7$, and a specified central speed of 1.0 meter per second, i.e. $v^* = 1.0$. These specifications resulted in the LSCB-motion (see Section 3.3.1) shown in Figure 3.18. The blend times are $T_i = 2.922 \text{s}$ and $T_{ii} = 4.942 \text{s}$ with the final time $T_{f} = 7.864 \text{s}$. The initial acceleration is $\ddot{s}_i(0) = 0.684$ and the final acceleration is $\ddot{s}_{ii}(T_{f}) = -0.684$ the magnitudes of which are both less than the specified maximum allowable acceleration magnitude $\ddot{s}_{AL} = 0.7$. 

Chapter 3
The cubic spline representations $X(t)$ and $Y(t)$ that represent the x- and y-coordinate positions as functions of time, and plotted at the 281 time instants, are shown in Figure 3.19, together with the graphs of the continuous x- and y- velocities ($\dot{X}(t)$ and $\dot{Y}(t)$ designated as $V_x$ and $V_y$) and accelerations ($\ddot{X}(t)$ and $\ddot{Y}(t)$ designated as $A_x$ and $A_y$) over the total time interval $[0, 7.864]$. Note that the start point and end point of the prescribed trajectory follows from the cubic spline representations $X(t)$ and $Y(t)$, i.e. $(-2, 2)$ at $t = 0$ and $(2, 2)$ at $t = 7.864 \text{s}$.

With the specification that the end-effector be tangentially orientated with respect to the prescribed curve, (see Section 3.4), the cubic spline approximation $\Phi(t)$ representing the orientation angle $\phi$ [degrees] over the time interval $[0, 7.864]$ may be determined and is shown in Figure 3.20. Also shown in Figure 3.20 are the continuous orientation angular velocity curve $\dot{\Phi}(t) \ \text{[rad/s]}$ as well as the continuous orientation angular acceleration curve $\ddot{\Phi}(t) \ \text{[rad/s}^2]$. 

Figure 3.18: LSCB-motion for parabolic test function with its associated speed and acceleration curves.

Figure 3.19: Plots of approximate coordinate positions, velocities and accelerations versus time for the parabolic test function.

Figure 3.20: Plots of approximate orientation angle, orientation angular velocity and acceleration for the parabolic test function.
3.5.2 Spike test function

The second test function is a spike test function taken from [68]:

\[ y(x) = \frac{1}{1 + x^2} \]  

This spike test function is also approximated over the x-interval \( x \in [-2, 2] \). The initial and final nodal points are \( P_0 = (x_0, y_0) = (2, 0.2) \) and \( P_N = (x_N, y_N) = (-2, 0.2) \) respectively. In total 27 nodal points are specified as shown in Figure 3.21, with denser distributions of nodal points at the end points of the interval, as well as at the midpoint as is evident in Figure 3.21.

![Figure 3.21: Nodal points used to specify the spike test function.](image)

As in the case of the parabolic test function of Section 3.5.1, each consecutive time span \( t_i - t_{i-1} \), \( i = 1, 2, \ldots, 26 \) is divided into 10 subintervals by equally spaced additional time instants. The approximate x-y profile is drawn by plotting the values at the 261 division points as shown in Figure 3.22. Here the absolute maximum y-error resulting from this approximation is \( 1.359 \times 10^{-4} \) with average error \( 1.201 \times 10^{-5} \).

![Figure 3.22: OCAS-approximation of spike test function.](image)
With a specified central speed of $v' = 1.0$ meter per second, and a specified maximum allowable acceleration $\ddot{s}_{\text{allow}} = 0.5 \text{ m/s}^2$, the resulting motion is described by two blended cubic polynomials (see Section 3.3.2.2), as shown in Figure 3.23. The associated blend time is $T_{\text{mid}} = 3.6148 \text{ s}$, and from the tangential speeds graph in Figure 3.23 it is clear that the speed at the blend time, $v_{\text{mid}} = 0.9037 \text{ m/s}$, is slightly less that the desired speed of $v' = 1.0 \text{ m/s}$. This is due to the fact that the magnitudes of both the initial and final curvature accelerations are equal to the maximum allowable acceleration of $\ddot{s}_{\text{allow}} = 0.5 \text{ m/s}^2$.

![Figure 3.23: Blended cubic polynomials motion for spike test function with its associated speed and acceleration curves.](image)

Figure 3.23 shows plots of the x- and y-positions $X(t)$ and $Y(t)$ (with start point $(2,0.2)$ at $t = 0$ and end point $(-2,0.2)$ at $t = 7.230 \text{ s}$), the x- and y-velocities $\dot{X}(t)$ and $\dot{Y}(t)$ (designated as $V_x$ and $V_y$), and the x- and y-accelerations $\ddot{X}(t)$ and $\ddot{Y}(t)$ (designated as $A_x$ and $A_y$) at the 261 time instants distributed over the time interval $[0,7.230]$.  

![Figure 3.24: Plots of the approximate coordinates, velocities and accelerations versus time for the spike test function.](image)

The tangentially orientated end-effector specification results in the cubic spline approximation $\Phi(t)$ [degrees] plotted in Figure 3.25, together with the corresponding plots of the continuous orientation angular velocity curve $\dot{\Phi}(t)$ [rad/s], and the continuous orientation angular acceleration curve $\ddot{\Phi}(t)$ [rad/s$^2$].
Figure 3.25: Plots of approximate orientation angle, orientation angular velocity and acceleration versus time for the spike test function.

In order to verify expressions (3.64) and (3.65), an orientation angle offset $\phi_{\text{offset}} = 30^\circ$ is specified, and the associated cubic spline approximation $\Phi(t)$ [degrees] is plotted in Figure 3.26. Also shown in Figure 3.26 are the corresponding plots of the continuous orientation angular velocity curve $\dot{\Phi}(t)$ [rad/s], and the continuous angular acceleration curve $\ddot{\Phi}(t)$ [rad/s$^2$].

Figure 3.26: Plots of approximate offset orientation angle, orientation angular velocity and acceleration versus time for the spike test function.

Comparing the offset cubic spline approximation $\Phi(t)$ of Figure 3.26 with the tangential cubic spline approximation $\Phi(t)$ of Figure 3.25, it is clear that the specified offset ($\phi_{\text{offset}} = 30^\circ$) resulted in an upward shift of the orientation angle curve. As expected, the orientation angular velocity and orientation angular acceleration curves of Figures 3.25 and 3.26 are in exact agreement.

3.5.3 Circular test curve

The ability of the proposed OCAS-approach to approximate curves that cannot be represented by unique-valued functions of one coordinate variable in terms of the other, is demonstrated here for the circle:

$$x^2 + y^2 = 9 \quad (3.68)$$

The nodal points $\{P_i = (x_i, y_i), i = 0, 1, ..., N\}$ are specified using corresponding sweep angles $\beta_i \in [0^\circ, 720^\circ]$, where the sweep angle is measured clockwise from the positive x-axis. For any specific
sweep angle $\beta_i$, $i = 0, 1, \ldots, N$ the corresponding x- and y-values are given by $x_i = 3\cos\beta_i$, and $y_i = 3\sin\beta_i$ respectively. Here the sequence of sweep angles $\{\beta_i\}$ is chosen such that starting at $\beta = 0^\circ$, two complete CCW revolutions are followed.

The spacing of the nodal points is again clustered around the beginning and end of the total interval as can be seen in Figure 3.27. A total of 79 nodal points cover the two revolutions of the circular path. The nodes for each revolution are shown separately in Figure 3.27. In particular, the first revolution ($\beta \in [0, 360^\circ]$) is shown on the left-hand side of Figure 3.27, and the second revolution ($\beta \in [360^\circ, 720^\circ]$) is shown on the right-hand side of Figure 3.27.

Figure 3.27: Nodal points used to approximate two revolutions of the circular curve.

As before, each time span $t_i - t_{i-1}$, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, 78$ is divided into 10 equal subintervals for the purpose of mapping the computed approximation at the division points (see Section 3.5.1). The x-y-profile obtained from the OCAS-approximation at the specified division points is shown in Figure 3.28. For any given time instant the approximated x- and y-coordinates correspond to an approximated radius, from which the absolute radius error can be calculated. The maximum absolute radius error computed over the 781 division points is $5.27 \times 10^{-5}$ with an average error of $6.27 \times 10^{-4}$.
The trajectory planning is done by limiting the maximum allowable acceleration to 0.5 meter per second square, i.e. $\ddot{s}_{\text{allow}} = 0.5 \text{ m/s}^2$, and by specifying a central speed of 1.0 meter per second, i.e. $v^c = 1.0 \text{ m/s}$. These specifications resulted in a LSCB-motion with corresponding blend times $T_1 = 4.712 \text{ s}$ and $T_2 = 36.127 \text{ s}$ (see Figure 3.29) and total path time $T_\text{path} = 40.841 \text{ s}$. The initial and final tangential accelerations are $\ddot{s}_t(0) = 0.424 \text{ m/s}^2$ and $\ddot{s}_f(T_\text{path}) = -0.424 \text{ m/s}^2$ both satisfying the bound on the magnitude of accelerations.

Figure 3.29: LSCB-motion for the circular curve with its accompanying speed and acceleration curves.

Figure 3.30 shows the x- and y-positions $X(t)$ and $Y(t)$ (with start point (3, 0) at $t = 0$ and end point (3, 0) at $t = 40.841 \text{ s}$), the x- and y-velocities $\dot{X}(t)$ and $\dot{Y}(t)$ (designated as $V_x$ and $V_y$), and the x- and y-accelerations $\ddot{X}(t)$ and $\ddot{Y}(t)$ (designated as $A_x$ and $A_y$) over the time interval $[0, 40.841]$. 
For the circular test curve, the situation depicted in Figure 3.14 occurs, where the specification of a tangentially orientated end-effector necessitates the monitoring of the behavior of the calculated gradient angle $\theta$ to keep track of the end-effector orientation angle $\phi$ (see Section 3.4). The corresponding cubic spline approximation $\Phi(t)$ [degrees] that results from the monitoring procedure outlined in Section 3.4 is shown in Figure 3.31. Since the nodal points were specified within the sweep angle range of $[0^\circ, 720^\circ]$, the orientation angle varies from $-90^\circ$ to $630^\circ$. The corresponding orientation angular velocity curve $\Phi'(t)$ [rad/s] and the orientation angular accelerations $\Phi''(t)$ [rad/s$^2$] are also shown in Figure 3.31.

The unexpected spikes at the beginning- and endpoints of the angular acceleration curve, as opposed to the smooth behavior of both $\dot{X}(t)$ and $\dot{Y}(t)$ in the same regions, are probably due to the slight inaccuracies introduced in the calculation of the gradient angle via expressions (3.60) and (3.61). Expression (3.60) uses the approximated gradient, while expression (3.61) uses the approximated $x$- and $y$-velocities to find the gradient angle $\theta$.

For the circular test curve under consideration, the exact gradient angle $\theta$ (and orientation angle $\phi$) corresponding to a given sweep angle $\beta$ may be determined (see Figure 3.32).
The figure clearly shows that the relationship \( \tan \theta = \frac{y}{x} \) applies, from which it follows that the exact gradient angle is \( \theta = \beta - 90^\circ \), which also allows for the exact determination of \( \phi \). With this information available a comparison can be made between the approximated and exact orientation angle at any point along the curve.

Corresponding to the determination of the absolute radius error, the absolute difference between the approximated orientation angle, and the exact orientation angle is referred to as the orientation angle error. For the circular test curve, the maximum absolute orientation angle error over all the 781 division points is \( 5.714 \times 10^{-4} \text{ rad} \), i.e. \( 0.03274^\circ \) with an average error \( 3.742 \times 10^{-5} \text{ rad} \), i.e. \( 0.00214^\circ \).

### 3.5.4 Logarithmic spiral test curve

The final analytical test curve is the logarithmic spiral taken from [69]:

\[
\rho = e^{0.18}
\]

(3.69)

which specifies the relationship between the polar coordinates \((\rho, \beta)\) of any point on the curve.

As in the case of the circular curve of Section 3.5.3, the spiral curve can also not be expressed as a function of one coordinate variable in terms of the other. The nodal points \( \{P_i = (x_i, y_i), i = 0, 1, \ldots N\} \) are generated via (3.69) where the polar angle plays the role of a sweep angle \( \beta \). For the spiral test curve the sweep angle ranges from \(-\pi\) to \(-5\pi\), i.e. \( \beta \in [-\pi, -5\pi] \). Note that the sweep angle is incremented such that the logarithmic spiral curve is traced in a CW manner, as opposed to the CCW-tracing of the circular test curve (see Section 3.5.3). The 79 nodal points specified are shown in Figure 3.33.
Figure 3.33: Nodal points used to approximate the spiral test curve.

Using the same procedure as outlined before, the x-y profile may be mapped at 781 division points as shown in Figure 3.34. For each interpolated point the x and y coordinates yield an interpolated radius, i.e. \( r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} \). Furthermore, for each interpolated point the relationship \( \tan \beta = \frac{y}{x} \) applies as it does for the circular test curve (see Figure 3.32). The calculated \( \beta \)-angle is used in a special procedure similar to the one explained in Section 3.4, to determine the exact \( \beta \)-polar coordinate associated with the interpolated point. Hence, by substituting the exact \( \beta \)-polar coordinate into expression (3.69), the \( \rho \)-polar coordinate as well as the absolute radius error \( |\rho - r| \) associated with the interpolated point may be determined. The maximum absolute radius error for the spiral test curve over the 781 division points is \( 1.361 \times 10^{-5} \) with average error \( 7.258 \times 10^{-7} \).

Figure 3.34: OCAS-approximation of spiral test curve.
Here the bound on the maximum allowable acceleration is 0.7 meter per second square, and a central speed of \( v' = 1 \text{ m/s} \) is specified. The resulting LSCB motion is shown in Figure 3.35, for which the respective blend times are \( T_1 = 2.968 \text{ s} \) and \( T_2 = 4.275 \text{ s} \) with total path time \( T = 7.224 \text{ s} \). The tangential accelerations are within the specified limits, since \( s_1(0) = 0.674 < 0.7 \) and \( s_1(T) = -0.678 < 0.7 \).

Figure 3.35: LSCB-motion for the spiral test curve with its accompanying speed and acceleration curves.

The corresponding approximated x- and y-positions \( X(t) \) and \( Y(t) \) (with start point \((-0.730, 0)\) at \( t = 0 \) and end point \((-0.208, 0)\) at \( t = 7.224 \text{ s} \)), x- and y-velocities \( \dot{X}(t) \) and \( \dot{Y}(t) \) (designated as \( V_x \) and \( V_y \)), and x- and y-accelerations \( \ddot{X}(t) \) and \( \ddot{Y}(t) \) (designated as \( A_x \) and \( A_y \)) computed at the 781 division points are plotted in Figure 3.36.

Figure 3.36: Plots of the approximate coordinates, velocities and accelerations versus time for the spiral test curve.

As for the circular test curve, the orientation angles of the spiral test curve are determined using the monitoring procedure outlined in Section 3.4. The end-effector orientation angle of the spiral test curve varies between \( 84.29^\circ \) and \(-635.71^\circ \) as shown in Figure 3.37.
Figure 3.37: Plots of the approximate orientation angle, orientation angular velocity and orientation angular acceleration versus time for the spiral test curve.

The orientation angular velocities \([\text{rad/s}]\) and the orientation angular accelerations \([\text{rad/s}^2]\) are also shown in Figure 3.37. Again the spikes at end point of the angular acceleration curve are probably due to slight inaccuracies in the determination of the orientation angle (see Section 3.5.3).

Although specifying an angular offset \(\phi_{\text{offset}} = -45^\circ\) shifts the orientation angle curve down as shown in Figure 3.38, the orientation angular velocity and orientation angular acceleration curves remain unchanged. In particular, the offset orientation angle of the spiral test curve varies between \(39.29^\circ\) and \(-680.71^\circ\).

Figure 3.38: Plots of the approximate offset orientation angle, orientation angular velocity and orientation angular acceleration versus time for the spiral test curve.

3.5.5 **Non-analytical test curve**

The final test curve is the non-analytical treble clef shown in Figure 3.39. The particular curve is a Non-Uniform Rational B-Spline (NURBS) generated with commercial Computer Aided Design (CAD) software, and fitted through the 42 nodal points also indicated in Figure 3.39. For trajectory planning purposes, the start- and end points are as indicated in Figure 3.39.

This illustrative example is typical of a real life situation where the prescribed curve is an arbitrary smooth curve for which no analytical expression exists.
Figure 3.39: CAD-spline drawing through specified points of the treble clef test curve.

The OCAS trajectory planning methodology is tested by specifying different sets of nodal points, where the nodal points of each set are differently spread along the CAD spline treble clef. In particular, three different sets of nodal points are chosen with respectively 22, 31 and 49 nodal points. The approximated OCAS x-y profiles computed at respectively 211, 301 and 481 division points are shown in Figure 3.40.

Figure 3.40: Three OCAS approximations of treble clef test curve.
By comparing Figure 3.40 with Figure 3.39, it is evident that the approximation capability of the OCAS trajectory planning methodology is accurate with relatively few specified nodal points. Using only 31 nodal points yields a reasonably accurate fit, while using 49 nodal points yields an approximation which by inspection shows no deviation from the original CAD-spline treble clef. However, specifying too few nodal points, and in an injudicious manner, results in a poor approximation as can be seen from the x-y profile computed for the 22 chosen nodal points in Figure 3.40.

The results presented in Figure 3.40 also emphasize the importance of clustered distributions of nodal points near the extreme points (especially the end point) of the prescribed curve, which ensure accurate approximations to $\frac{dy}{dx}$ at $P_0$ and $P_N$.

Since the choice of 49 nodal points gives the best approximation, its associated trajectory planning results are also shown. Here the bound on the maximum allowable acceleration is $5 \text{ mm/s}^2$, and a central speed of $v^* = 10 \text{ mm/s}$ is specified. The resulting LSCB motion is shown in Figure 3.41, for which the respective blend times are $T_1 = 5.126 \text{s}$ and $T_0 = 40.1435 \text{s}$ with total path time $T_{III} = 44.693 \text{s}$. The tangential accelerations are within the specified limits, since $\ddot{s}(0) = 3.834 < 5$ and $|\ddot{s}(T_{III})| = -4.396 < 5$.

![Figure 3.41: LSCB-motion for the treble clef test curve with its accompanying speed and acceleration curves.](image)

The corresponding approximated x- and y-positions $X(t)$ and $Y(t)$ (with start point $(27.0, 44.0)$ at $t = 0$ and end point $(13.0, 13.0)$ at $t = 44.693 \text{s}$), x- and y-velocities $\dot{X}(t)$ and $\dot{Y}(t)$ (designated as $\dot{V}_x$ and $\dot{V}_y$), and x- and y-accelerations $\ddot{X}(t)$ and $\ddot{Y}(t)$ (designated as $\ddot{A}_x$ and $\ddot{A}_y$) computed at the 481 division points are plotted in Figure 3.42.
Figure 3.42: Plots of the approximate coordinates, velocities and accelerations versus time for the treble clef test curve.

The treble clef prescribed curve is traced with the end-effector in a fixed horizontal orientation $\phi = 0^\circ$, hence the orientation angle curves are omitted here.
Chapter 4

4 THE DETERMINATION OF OPTIMUM PLATFORM GEOMETRIES FOR PRESCRIBED MACHINING TASKS

4.1 Introduction

Du Plessis et al. [70] introduced the unique concept of an adjustable geometry planar Gough-Stewart platform machining center, where the geometry of the planar machining center is optimized using the LFOPC-algorithm [64]. The geometry was optimized with respect to the static actuator forces required to hold the mechanism in static equilibrium at each instant along the prescribed path. The dynamic actuator forces were also taken into account in the work by Snyman and Smit [71], in which the manipulator dynamics were simulated using the Dynamic Analysis Design System (DADS v. 9.0) [72]. They found that optimizing the platform geometry using the DADS software for the dynamics was computationally expensive if excessive numerical noise in the objective functions was to be avoided.

This chapter now explains how the LFOPC-algorithm [64] may be used to optimize the adjustable geometry of the planar Gough-Stewart platform machining center for any reasonably prescribed path using the stand-alone and fundamentally based inverse dynamic analysis procedure developed in Chapter 2. Here the actuator forces are determined as the manipulator moves in a prescribed manner along the specified path. In this study, the path specification is done using the OCAS trajectory-planning methodology as explained in Chapter 3.

Minimizing the dynamic actuator forces required for executing the prescribed path with respect to the geometry, results in the avoidance of the very large actuator forces associated with singularities. Furthermore, as a by-product of the constrained optimization procedure, a positioning of the planar Gough-Stewart platform relative to the prescribed path is obtained that automatically ensures that the tool path is feasibly placed within the workspace of the mechanism. If it is not possible to place the prescribed path inside the workspace of the manipulator, the optimization algorithm yields an optimum compromised design geometry which allows the user to intervene in a rational manner.
Section 4.2 explains the formulation of the basic constrained optimization problem, while Section 4.3 gives details regarding the evaluation of the objective and constraint functions. The procedure for solving the optimization problem is explained in Section 4.4. Finally, the results of a representative optimization test run are shown and discussed in Section 4.5.

### 4.2 Formulation of the constrained optimization problem

In general, any conceptual design, dependent on \( n \) real design variables \( \mathbf{X} = [X_1, X_2, X_3, \ldots, X_n]^T \), can be optimized by firstly defining an appropriate objective function \( F(\mathbf{X}) \), and where applicable, additional inequality constraints \( C_j(\mathbf{X}) \leq 0 \) \( (j = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, m) \) and equality constraints \( H_k(\mathbf{X}) = 0 \) \( (k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, p < n) \). The optimum design \( \mathbf{X}^* \) and optimum objective function value \( F(\mathbf{X}^*) \) can then be found by applying any one of several available optimization techniques or algorithms, to solve the following mathematically formulated (constrained) optimization problem:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{minimize} & \quad F(\mathbf{X}) \\
\text{with} & \quad \mathbf{X} = [X_1, X_2, X_3, \ldots, X_n]^T \\
\text{such that} & \quad C_j(\mathbf{X}) \leq 0 \quad (j = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, m) \quad \text{and} \quad H_k(\mathbf{X}) = 0 \quad (k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, p < n)
\end{align*}
\]  

(4.1)

The selection of the design variables must be such that the objective function \( F(\mathbf{X}) \), the inequality constraint functions \( C_j(\mathbf{X}) \) \( (j = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, m) \) and the equality constraint functions \( H_k(\mathbf{X}) \) \( (k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, p < n) \) are all dependent on \( \mathbf{X} = [X_1, X_2, X_3, \ldots, X_n]^T \).

#### 4.2.1 Design variables describing the adjustable geometry of the planar Gough-Stewart platform machining center

With reference to Chapter 2, where the planar Gough-Stewart platform machining center was introduced (see Figure 2.2 and 2.5), the positioning of the actuator joints on the base and on the moving platform may easily be adjusted. This feature is also incorporated in the practical design of the planar Gough-Stewart platform test-model with continuously adjustable geometry (see Appendix D). In particular the five design variables \( \mathbf{X} = [X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4, X_5]^T \), indicated by the arrows in Figure 4.1, are used to describe the proposed adjustable geometry.
Figure 4.1: Five design variables describing the adjustable geometry planar Gough-Stewart platform machining center.

The two design variables $X_3$ and $X_4$ represent the coordinates of the left most revolute joint $C$ on the horizontal base relative to the fixed global reference frame. In practical terms this implies that the position of point $C$ on the base of the planar Gough-Stewart platform must be adjustable. This required positional adjustment may of course also be accomplished in practice by shifting the position of the global origin 0 relative to the fixed horizontal base (see Figure 2.8 and 2.10 for the fixed workpiece and fixed cutting tool cases respectively). The tool path is described relative to the global origin 0, and the kinematic and kinetic analysis of the mechanism is also done relative to its position (Chapter 2).

The remaining three design variables $X_1$, $X_2$ and $X_5$ indicate the relative distances between the linearly adjustable revolute joints of the fixed base ($X_2$ and $X_5$) and the moving platform ($X_1$).

In summary, and with reference to Figure 4.1,

$$|\xi^a_1| + \xi^b_1 = X_1$$

(4.2)

and

$$x^c = X_4 \quad \quad x^o = X_4 + X_2 \quad \quad x^e = X_4 + X_2 + X_5$$

$$y^c = X_3 \quad \quad y^o = X_3 \quad \quad y^e = X_5$$

(4.3)
In order to solve for expression (4.2), one of the two local coordinates \( \xi^A \) or \( \xi^B \) must be known. If the center of mass of the moving platform is midway between revolute joints A and B, expression (4.2) reduces to \( |\xi^A| = |\xi^B| = \frac{X_1}{2} \).

### 4.2.2 Objective function used to optimize the planar machining center geometry

The objective function used here, is the overall maximum magnitude of the individual actuator forces \( f_k \), \( k = 1, 2, 3 \) (see expression (2.124)), as the planar Gough-Stewart platform moves along a prescribed tool path.

Using the OCAS trajectory-planning algorithm, the prescribed path is specified by a set of nodal points \( \{P_i = (x_i, y_i), i = 0, 1, ..., N\} \) (see Section 3.1). Time instants are then allocated to the consecutive nodal points according to the specified tangential “cutting speed”, as well as the magnitude of the maximum allowable tangential acceleration. Each consecutive time span \( [t_i, t_{i+1}] \), \( i = 0, 1, ..., N - 1 \), with associated magnitudes \( \Delta t_i = t_{i+1} - t_i \) is then subdivided into an additional number of equally spaced intermediate time instants, using the parameter \( n_{\text{time}} \) (see Appendix B). This intermediate time parameter is used in the OCAS-algorithm for the graphical representation of the results as is explained in Section 3.5.1.

In determining the overall maximum magnitude of the individual actuator forces \( f_k \), \( k = 1, 2, 3 \), for a specific prescribed tool path, the additional time discretization parameter \( n_{\text{time}} \) is again utilized. This allows for a further discretization of the interval \( [t_i, t_{i+1}] \) into time instants \( t_{i,j} = t_i + \frac{j}{n_{\text{time}}} \Delta t_i \), \( i = 0, 1, 2, ..., N - 1; j = 0, 1, 2, ..., n_{\text{time}} \). Hence, for a sufficiently refined time discretization \( \{t_{i,j}, i = 0, 1, 2, ..., N - 1; j = 0, 1, 2, ..., n_{\text{time}}\} \) over \([0, T] = [0, t_{N-1, n_{\text{time}}}]\), the objective function may be taken as

\[
F(\mathbf{X}) = \max_{k=1,2,3} \left\{ \max_{i=0,1,2,\ldots,N-1} \left[ f_k(t_{i,j}) \right] \right\}, \quad i = 0, 1, 2, ..., N - 1; \quad j = 0, 1, 2, ..., n_{\text{time}}
\]  

(4.4)

The occurrence of singularities inside the workspace of Gough-Stewart platforms is associated with dramatic increases in actuator forces [59]. Minimizing the above objective function will push the design

---

* note that \( t_{0,0} = t_{1,0, n_{\text{time}}} \)
towards an optimum platform geometry which avoids close proximity to singularities as a specific prescribed path is traced.

Apart from the fact that the objective function is dependent on the prescribed path, it is also shown in Section 4.3 that expression (2.124) is indeed an implicit function of the vector of design variables \( X = \begin{bmatrix} X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4, X_5 \end{bmatrix} \), and that the objective function is therefore well defined.

4.2.3 Constraints applicable on the planar machining center

With reference to Figure 4.1, the allowable relative distances between the linearly adjustable revolute joints of the fixed base (\( X_2 \) and \( X_5 \)) and the moving platform (\( X_1 \)) are subject to physical lower (\( X_i, i = 1,2,5 \)) and upper (\( \overline{X}_i, i = 1,2,5 \)) bounds, i.e.

\[ X_i \leq X_j \leq \overline{X}_i, \quad i = 1,2,5 \tag{4.5} \]

Similarly, the actuator leg lengths (\( \ell_i, i = 1,2,3 \)) are bounded by minimum (\( \ell_{i}, i = 1,2,3 \)) and maximum (\( \overline{\ell}_i, i = 1,2,3 \)) leg length limits:

\[ \ell_i \leq \ell_j \leq \overline{\ell}_i, \quad i = 1,2,3 \tag{4.6} \]

These bounds are defined as the mechanism configurational constraints, and determine its working capability, since for any specific operational geometry \( X = \begin{bmatrix} X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4, X_5 \end{bmatrix} \) to be feasible, the mechanism configurational constraints (4.5) and (4.6) must be satisfied.

The formulation of the constrained optimization problem (expression (4.1)) allows for the easy imposition of the above configurational constraints, since they may readily be expressed as general inequality constraints of the form \( C_j(X) \leq 0, \quad (j = 1,2,3,\ldots,m) \).

In particular, expression (4.5) represents the first six inequality constraints \( C_j(X) \leq 0, \quad (j = 1,2,3,\ldots,6) : \)

\[
\begin{align*}
C_1(X) &= X_1 - X_i \leq 0 \\
C_2(X) &= X_1 - X_1 \leq 0 \\
C_3(X) &= X_2 - X_i \leq 0 \\
C_4(X) &= X_2 - X_1 \leq 0 \\
C_5(X) &= X_3 - X_i \leq 0 \\
C_6(X) &= X_3 - X_1 \leq 0
\end{align*}
\]
The leg length limits \( \ell_i \leq \ell_i \leq \bar{\ell}_i, \ i = 1,2,3 \) (expression (4.6)) represent an additional six inequality constraints \( C_{j+6}(X) \leq 0, \ j = 1,2,3,...,6 \). As with the objective function (4.4), these six inequality constraints are dependent on the prescribed path, as well as the design variables \( X = [X_1,X_2,X_3,X_4,X_5]^T \) (see Section 4.3). Monitoring the prescribed path and corresponding platform geometry at discrete time instants \( t_{i,j} \), the overall maximum and minimum actuator leg lengths may be obtained. They are respectively given by \( \ell_k^\max (X) = \max_{i,j} [\ell_k(t_{i,j},X)] \) and \( \ell_k^\min (X) = \min_{i,j} [\ell_k(t_{i,j},X)] \) for \( k = 1,2,3 \) and \( \{t_{i,j}, i = 0,1,2,...,N-1; j = 0,1,2,...,n_{\text{time}} \} \) suitably small monitoring time intervals as previously defined in Section 4.2.2. The allowable maximum and minimum actuator leg lengths are respectively denoted by \( \bar{\ell}_k \) and \( \ell_k \), \( k = 1,2,3 \), resulting in the following six mathematically expressed inequality constraints:

\[
C_{k+6}(X) = \ell_k^\max (X) - \bar{\ell}_k \leq 0, \ k = 1,2,3 \\
C_{k+9}(X) = \ell_k^\min (X) - \ell_k \leq 0, \ k = 1,2,3
\]

(4.8)

### 4.3 Evaluation of the constrained optimization problem

The formulated constrained optimization problem (Section 4.2) is evaluated for a specific prescribed path, given any arbitrary design \( X = [X_1,X_2,X_3,X_4,X_5]^T \). The design vector \( X \) fixes the operational geometry of the platform.

#### 4.3.1 Evaluation of the objective function

Evaluating the objective function (4.4), involves performing a kinematic and kinetic analysis of the planar Gough-Stewart platform as explained in Chapter 2. In particular, for any time instant along the prescribed path, the position \((x_1,y_1)\) and orientation \((\phi_1)\) of the moving platform (body 1 in Figure 2.5) are known (see Section 2.4). Furthermore, with the operational geometry \( (X) \) fixed, expression (4.2) yields the local \( \xi_1^A \)- and \( \xi_1^B \)-coordinates while expression (4.3) yields global coordinates \((x^C,y^C)\), \((x^D,y^D)\) and \((x^E,y^E)\). Note that since the coordinates \((x^A,y^A)\) and \((x^B,y^B)\) follow from \((x_1,y_1,\phi_1)\), \(\xi_1^A\) and \(\xi_1^B\) in expression (2.57), expressions (2.58) – (2.61) may be solved for. Expressions (2.57) – (2.61) uniquely define the coordinate vector \( q = [x_1,y_1,\phi_1,x_2,y_2,\phi_2,...,x_5,y_5,\phi_5]^T \), which uniquely defines the Jacobian matrix of the planar Gough-Stewart platform given by expression (2.62). The Jacobian matrix is used to find the accelerations of the individual bodies (expression (2.56)). With these
accelerations known, the Jacobian matrix is again used to solve the inverse dynamic equations of motion (expression (2.124)) for the unknown LaGrange multipliers $\lambda$ and actuator forces $ff$.

The sensitivity of the objective function (4.4) to each of the design variable $X_i$, $i = 1, 2, ..., 5$ may also be graphically determined. This is done by fixing four of the five design variables, and varying the fifth while evaluating the objective function value.

As an example, the sensitivity analysis is done for a path where the center of mass of the moving platform follows a straight-line prescribed path inclined at $60^\circ$ to the horizontal as shown in Figure 4.2. Five equally spaced nodal points are used to specify the path, and using the OCAS-algorithm, the trajectory-planning is done for a specified constant tangential speed of $0.01 \text{ m/s}$. Furthermore, the default time discretization parameter, $n_{\text{time}} = 10$, is used resulting in a total of 41 monitoring time intervals.

The direction of travel is such that the initial configuration of the mechanism corresponds to the one shown in dashed lines in Figure 4.2 and the final configuration to the one in solid lines. Furthermore, the moving platform remains horizontal as the straight-line path is traced. The fixed values of the respective design variables are

$$X_1 = 0.4 \text{ m} \quad X_2 = 0.4 \text{ m} \quad X_3 = -0.4 \text{ m} \quad X_4 = -0.4 \text{ m} \quad X_5 = 0.2 \text{ m} \quad (4.9)$$

and the mass matrix of this example platform is given by expression (2.132).

Figure 4.2: Straight-line prescribed path.
The sensitivity of the objective function to design variable $X_1$ is shown in Figure 4.3. Here $X_1$ is varied with a step size of 0.0025 m between 0.1 m and 1.0 m, while design variables $X_2$, $X_3$, $X_4$ and $X_5$ remain fixed (see expression (4.9)).

![Objective function value](image)

**Figure 4.3:** Objective function (4.4) versus design variable $X_1$.

Figure 4.3 consists of a single smooth curve, indicating that as $X_1$ varies, a single actuator is responsible for carrying the maximum magnitude actuator force. For the example prescribed path considered here (Figure 4.2), actuator leg $\ell_1$ (see Figure 4.1) carries the maximum magnitude actuator force.

Evaluating the objective function while varying design variable $X_1$ with a step size of 0.000001 m between 0.5756 m and 0.576 m, magnifies the curve as shown in Figure 4.4. This curve demonstrates the effective absence of any numerical noise in the analysis.

![Objective function value](image)

**Figure 4.4:** Close-up of objective function (4.4) versus design variable $X_1$. 

Chapter 4
This absence of noise is due to the fact that the objective function (expression (4.4)) is determined with high accuracy using the fundamentally based inverse dynamic analysis procedure explained in Chapter 2.

The sensitivity of the objective function to $X_2$ is shown in Figure 4.5. Here design variables $X_1$, $X_3$, $X_4$ and $X_5$ remain fixed (see expression (4.9)) while $X_1$ is varied with a step size of 0.0025 m between 0.1 m and 1.0 m.

![Figure 4.5: Objective function (4.4) versus design variable $X_2$.](image)

In contrast to Figure 4.3 which consists of a single smooth curve, Figure 4.5 consists of four smooth curves linked to each other at three points where discontinuities in the slope (kinks) occur. Each of the three kinks in the above graph is due to a switch in the actuator leg responsible for the maximum magnitude actuator force.

![Figure 4.6: Close-up of objective function (4.4) versus design variable $X_2$.](image)
Figure 4.6 shows a close-up view of the first two kinks, where the left most smooth curve represents actuator leg $\ell_2$ (see Figure 4.1) carrying the maximum magnitude actuator force, the middle smooth curve represents actuator leg $\ell_3$ carrying the maximum magnitude actuator force, and the right most smooth curve represents actuator leg $\ell_1$ carrying the maximum magnitude actuator force. The isolated discontinuity in Figure 4.5 occurring near $X_2 = 0.8$ m is due to the switch between actuator legs $\ell_1$ and $\ell_2$ in carrying the maximum magnitude actuator force.

The respective sensitivities of the objective function (4.4) to design variables $X_3$, $X_4$, and $X_5$ are as shown in, Figures 4.7 – 4.9.

### 4.3.2 Evaluation of the inequality constraints

Inequality constraints (4.7) may, of course, be explicitly evaluated. The evaluation of the inequality constraints (4.8) follow from the kinematic and kinetic analysis mentioned in Section 4.3.1. With the global coordinates of points A, B, C, D and E known at any time instant $t$, actuator leg lengths $\ell_1(X,t)$, $\ell_2(X,t)$ and $\ell_3(X,t)$ are the magnitudes of respective vectors $\overrightarrow{CA}$, $\overrightarrow{DA}$ and $\overrightarrow{EB}$ (see Figure 4.1):

$$
\ell_1(X,t) = \overrightarrow{CA} = \sqrt{(x^A - x^C)^2 + (y^A - y^C)^2}
$$

$$
\ell_2(X,t) = \overrightarrow{DA} = \sqrt{(x^A - x^D)^2 + (y^A - y^D)^2}
$$

$$
\ell_3(X,t) = \overrightarrow{EB} = \sqrt{(x^B - x^E)^2 + (y^B - y^E)^2}
$$

Note that mechanism configurational constraint (4.6), not only fixes the allowable maximum and minimum actuator leg lengths, but also influences the kinematic and kinetic performance of the planar
Gough-Stewart platform. This follows from the relationship existing between the physical dimensions of the two bodies comprising an actuator leg, and the allowable relative actuator displacement.

Consider translational joint 2–5, which is the left most actuator leg of the planar Gough-Stewart platform as shown in Figure 2.5 (actuator leg $\ell_i$ in Figure 4.1). The physical dimensions of bodies 2 and 5 determine the allowable actuator displacement of leg 1. Furthermore, the local $0_2 \xi_2 \eta_2$ and $0_5 \xi_5 \eta_5$ coordinate systems are chosen with $0_2$ and $0_5$ respectively coinciding with the centers of mass of bodies 2 and 5, the positions of which are also determined by the physical dimensions of these two bodies. With the positions of the respective centers of mass of bodies 2 and 5 known, local coordinates $\xi_2^s$ and $\xi_5^c$ are also known. Similar arguments apply for translational joints 3–6 and 4–7.

With reference to Figure 2.5, local coordinates $\xi_3^a$ and $\xi_6^b$ of translational joint 3–6, $\xi_4^b$ and $\xi_7^d$ of translational joint 4–7, together with local coordinates $\xi_2^c$ and $\xi_5^c$ of translational joint 2–5 are required to solve for expression (2.61).

### 4.4 Solving the constrained optimization problem

As mentioned in Section 4.1, the LFOPC-algorithm [64] is used here to optimize the adjustable geometry of the planar Gough-Stewart platform machining center for any specific prescribed path. The optimization procedure is schematically represented in Figure 4.10.

![Figure 4.10: Optimization of the adjustable geometry of the planar platform machining center.](image-url)
The user specifies the initial design $X^o$ as well as the prescribed path. The simulation of the planar Gough-Stewart platform involves the OCAS trajectory-planning algorithm presented in Chapter 3, as well as the kinematic and kinetic analysis of Chapter 2.

The LFOPC optimization algorithm [64] used here is a gradient-based method for unconstrained minimization applied to a penalty function formulation of the constrained optimization problem. A more detailed description of the LFOPC-algorithm is given in Appendix C. In short, a penalty function is created by combining the objective function (4.4) and the inequality constraint equations (4.7) and (4.8). Furthermore, the gradient vector of the penalty function determines the adjustment of the design vector $X$ as the LFOPC-algorithm searches iteratively for an optimum design $X^*$. These optimization iterations continue until one of the following two convergence criteria (see Figure 4.10) is satisfied:

1. The norm of the penalty function gradient vector is below a specified value $\epsilon_g$.
2. The norm of the relative design vector, given by $\left\| X^{\text{Current}} - X^{\text{Previous}} \right\|$, is below a specified tolerance $\epsilon_s$.

In determining the gradient vector of the penalty function, LFOPC requires the gradient vector of the objective function with respect to the design variables, as well as the gradient vectors of each inequality constraint with respect to the design variables.

The gradient vector of the objective function (4.1) with respect to the design variables is obtained by differentiating numerically using forward finite differences [55]. The components of the objective function gradient vector at any specific design $X = [X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4, X_5]^T$ is approximated by

$$\frac{\partial F(X)}{\partial X_i} \approx f [X + \Delta X_i, X] = \frac{F(X + \Delta X_i) - F(X)}{\epsilon_i}$$

(4.11)

where $\Delta X_i = [0, 0, ..., \epsilon_i, ..., 0]^T$ with $\epsilon_i > 0$ in the $i^{th}$ position, and $i = 1, 2, ..., 5$.

With reference to the optimization flowchart given in Figure 4.10, six simulation runs of the planar Gough-Stewart platform are required per iteration. This is because at each design point forward finite differences are used in computing the gradient components of the objective function, requiring five perturbed objective function values, and one unperturbed objective function value as is apparent from expression (4.11).

The appropriate values of $\epsilon_i$ to be used may be determined from an experimental sensitivity study of the approximate gradients with respect to different step sizes $\epsilon_i$ of the five design variables. For any chosen design $X$, the objective function may be determined as the platform traces the prescribed path. The
sensitivity of, for example the variation of the approximation \( F[X + \Delta X_i, X] \) to \( \frac{\partial F(X)}{\partial X_i} \) with respect to different orders of magnitude of \( \varepsilon_i \), may be represented by an exponential graph. The graph of \( F[X + \Delta X_i, X] \) versus \( \varepsilon_i \) is expected to show a stable plateau, the mid \( \varepsilon \)-value of which is the most suitable value to be used in expression (4.11).

A sensitivity analysis of \( F[X + \Delta X_i, X] \) versus \( \varepsilon_i \) is performed here for the example straight-line prescribed path shown in Figure 4.2. For this sensitivity analysis, a constant tangential speed of 0.1 m/s is specified, and the moving platform remains horizontal as the prescribed path is traced. The fixed design of the adjustable geometry planar Gough-Stewart platform at which the sensitivity analysis is performed is \( X = [0.4, 0.4, -0.4, -0.4, 0.2]^T \) (see Figure 4.2) and the mass matrix of this example platform is given by expression (2.132).

The computed approximations \( F[X + \Delta X_i, X] \) (denoted by \( F[X + \Delta X_i, X] \)) to the gradients \( \frac{\partial F(X)}{\partial X_i} \), \( i = 1, 2, \ldots, 5 \) are plotted versus \( \varepsilon \) in Figure 4.11.

![Figure 4.11: Sensitivity of \( F[X + \Delta X_i, X] \) to step size \( \varepsilon \), for \( i = 1, 2, \ldots, 5 \).](image)

The above sensitivity analyses show that the choice \( \varepsilon_i = \varepsilon = 10^{-8}, i = 1, 2, \ldots, 5 \) will result in reliable computed gradients.
The components of the gradient vectors of each inequality constraint function in (4.7) are, of course, analytically known and given by:

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial C_1(X)}{\partial X_1} &= 1, & \frac{\partial C_1(X)}{\partial X_2} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_1(X)}{\partial X_3} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_1(X)}{\partial X_4} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_1(X)}{\partial X_5} &= 0, \\
\frac{\partial C_2(X)}{\partial X_1} &= -1, & \frac{\partial C_2(X)}{\partial X_2} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_2(X)}{\partial X_3} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_2(X)}{\partial X_4} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_2(X)}{\partial X_5} &= 0, \\
\frac{\partial C_3(X)}{\partial X_1} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_3(X)}{\partial X_2} &= 1, & \frac{\partial C_3(X)}{\partial X_3} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_3(X)}{\partial X_4} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_3(X)}{\partial X_5} &= 0, \\
\frac{\partial C_4(X)}{\partial X_1} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_4(X)}{\partial X_2} &= -1, & \frac{\partial C_4(X)}{\partial X_3} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_4(X)}{\partial X_4} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_4(X)}{\partial X_5} &= 0, \\
\frac{\partial C_5(X)}{\partial X_1} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_5(X)}{\partial X_2} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_5(X)}{\partial X_3} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_5(X)}{\partial X_4} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_5(X)}{\partial X_5} &= 1, \\
\frac{\partial C_6(X)}{\partial X_1} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_6(X)}{\partial X_2} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_6(X)}{\partial X_3} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_6(X)}{\partial X_4} &= 0, & \frac{\partial C_6(X)}{\partial X_5} &= -1. 
\end{align*}
\]

(4.12)

On the other hand, the forward finite difference formula is again used to numerically approximate the derivatives of the inequality constraint functions in (4.8) at any given design \( X = [X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4, X_5, X_6]^T \):

\[
\frac{\partial C_{j=e}(X)}{\partial X_i} \approx C_{j=e}[X + \Delta X_i, X] = \frac{C_{j=e}(X + \Delta X_i) - C_{j=e}(X)}{\varepsilon_i}
\]

(4.13)

where \( \Delta X_i = [0, 0, \ldots, \varepsilon_i, \ldots, 0]^T \) with \( \varepsilon_i > 0 \) in the \( i^{th} \) position, and \( j = 1, 2, \ldots, 6 \).

The same six simulation runs of the planar Gough-Stewart platform required to determine the objective function gradient vector, are utilized to evaluate expression (4.13).

The gradients of the inequality constraint functions are expected to have similar sensitivities with respect to the order of magnitude of \( \varepsilon_i \) as the objective function gradients (see Figure 4.11), hence \( \varepsilon_i \equiv \varepsilon = 10^{-8} \) is used in expression (4.13), for all \( j \).

4.5 Discussion of optimization results

The prescribed straight-line path of Figure 4.2 is used here to illustrate the determination of the optimum geometry of the planar Gough-Stewart platform machining center for a given task path. Using the general OCAS trajectory-planning methodology (see Chapter 3), the straight-line path is prescribed by specifying 5 nodal points as shown in Figure 4.12. Again the default value of \( n_{\text{time}} = 10 \) is used for the discretization parameter in the analysis of the straight-line path.
For this illustrative example, the "fixed workpiece" mode of operation of the machining center, as explained in Sections 2.4.1 and 2.6.4.2.1, is used with a zero tool length $\eta_t = 0.0$. Specifying a zero tool length enforces the center of mass of the moving platform to trace the prescribed straight-line path, as was done for the sensitivity analysis explained in Section 4.3.1. Furthermore, a fixed moving platform orientation $\phi_i = 0$ (see Figure 4.2) is maintained with a constant tangential cutting speed of $0.01 \text{ m/s}$ and a "cutting force constant" $C_{cut} = 10000 \text{ Ns/m}$ (see expression (2.107)). Since the length of the prescribed straight-line path is $0.4 \text{ m}$, the motion takes $40 \text{ s}$ to complete.

With reference to Figure 4.1 the initial configuration of the planar machining center is $X^0 = [0.4, 0.4, -0.4, -0.4, 0.2]^T$, where the design variables $X_1^0$, $X_2^0$ and $X_3^0$ (given in m) are in scaled agreement with the geometry of Haug et al.'s [73] planar Gough-Stewart platform. The initial coordinates $(X_1^0; X_2^0)$ of the left-most revolute joint on the horizontal base are arbitrarily chosen as $(-0.4; -0.4)$. Figure 4.2 is a scaled schematic representation of the machining center fixed to these initial geometry settings $X^0 = [0.4, 0.4, -0.4, -0.4, 0.2]^T$ at the start and end points of the prescribed straight-line path. The mass matrix of this platform is again given by expression (2.132).

Figure 4.14 shows the variation in the respective actuator lengths (designated by $L_1$, $L_2$ and $L_3$) as the prescribed path is followed using the initial design, while Figure 4.16 shows the variation of corresponding actuator forces $f_k$, $k = 1, 2, 3$ (designated by $f_1$, $f_2$ and $f_3$) for the prescribed path.
It is important to note that the allowable maximum actuator lengths \( \ell_k = 0.525 \text{ m}, \ k = 1,2,3 \) designated by \( L_{\text{max}} \) in Figure 4.14 are violated if the initial design is used to trace the prescribed path. These violations imply that the specified tool path lies outside the workspace of the platform and that the initial geometry settings are therefore infeasible for carrying out the prescribed task. The specific bounds of the mechanism configurational constraints, given in meters, (see Section 4.2.3, expressions (4.5) and (4.6)), are

\[
0.1 \leq X_1 \leq 0.45 \\
0.113 \leq X_2 \leq 0.465 \\
0.113 \leq X_3 \leq 0.27
\]  

and

\[
0.075 \leq \ell_i \leq 0.525, \ i = 1,2,3
\]  

In particular, the inequality constraint function values for tracing the straight-line prescribed tool path using the initial design \( X^0 \), are

\[
C_1(X^0) = -0.05 \quad C_2(X^0) = -0.3 \quad C_3(X^0) = -0.065 \\
C_4(X^0) = -0.287 \quad C_5(X^0) = -0.07 \quad C_6(X^0) = -0.087 \\
\rightarrow C_7(X^0) = 0.21202 \quad \rightarrow C_8(X^0) = 0.15559 \quad \rightarrow C_9(X^0) = 0.15559 \\
C_{10}(X^0) = -0.26675 \quad C_{11}(X^0) = -0.36862 \quad C_{12}(X^0) = -0.26675
\]

where the violated inequality constraints associated with the initial design \( X^0 \) have function values greater than zero, and are indicated by a single arrow \( \rightarrow \).

The optimized geometry settings for the straight-line prescribed path are:

\( X^* = [0.44978, 0.34151, -0.14924, -0.38010, 0.13973]^T \). Figure 4.13 shows a scaled schematic representation of the machining center fixed to these optimal geometry settings at the start and end points of the prescribed straight-line path. Figure 4.15 shows the variation in the actuator lengths for the optimum platform design. The varying actuator lengths lie well within the minimum and maximum bounds specified, demonstrating the feasibility of the optimum design \( X^* \). The particular inequality constraint function values for tracing the straight-line prescribed tool path using the optimum design \( X^* \), are

\[
C_1(X^*) = -0.223 \times 10^{-3} \quad C_2(X^*) = -0.34978 \quad C_3(X^*) = -0.12349 \\
C_4(X^*) = -0.22851 \quad C_5(X^*) = -0.13027 \quad C_6(X^*) = -0.02673 \\
C_7(X^*) = -0.03145 \quad C_8(X^*) = -0.09383 \quad C_9(X^*) = -0.04696 \\
C_{10}(X^*) = -0.01897 \quad C_{11}(X^*) = -0.21098 \quad C_{12}(X^*) = -0.00466
\]
Note that since all the above inequality constraint function values are less than zero, the optimum design found by the LFOPC-algorithm is referred to as an *unconstrained optimum*. In the event that the optimum solution corresponds to a design where one or more inequality constraint function values are equal to zero, the associated constraints are considered *active*, and the design $X^*$ is known as a *constrained optimum*. In the actual practical numerical identification of active constraints, the condition *equal to zero* is relaxed to *approximately equal to zero*.

![Figure 4.13: Scaled schematic representation of optimum machining center geometry settings.](image)

![Figure 4.14: Initial design: variation of actuator lengths along tool path.](image)

![Figure 4.15: Optimum design: variation of actuator lengths along tool path.](image)
The effectiveness of the optimization procedure is further borne out by comparing Figure 4.16, with Figure 4.17, showing the variations in actuator forces for the optimum and initial designs respectively. For this simple illustrative example, the objective function value (expression (4.4)) is reduced by approximately 35% by optimizing the geometry of the platform. The initial objective function value is $F(X_0) = 110.28 \text{ N}$ in actuator leg 1, compared to the optimum objective function value of $F(X^*) = 71.32 \text{ N}$, also in actuator leg 1.

The objective function convergence history is depicted in Figure 4.18.
The labels $\odot$ – $\oslash$ in Figure 4.18 are used in Table 4.1 to relate the *iteration number* and *phase* of the LFOPC-algorithm (see Appendix C) to the actuator leg responsible for the *maximum magnitude actuator force* (see Section 4.2.2) and the violated inequality constraints at the indicated regions of the convergence curve.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Labels</th>
<th>Iter. No.</th>
<th>LFOPC-Phase</th>
<th>Act. Leg</th>
<th>Violated Inequality Constraints</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$X^0$</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_7, C_8, C_9$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25-26</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\odot$</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_3$</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>29</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30-32</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\ominus$</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_1, C_{12}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_1, C_{12}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_1, C_{12}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_1, C_{12}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\ominus$</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_1$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40-42</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_3$</td>
<td>$C_1$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>43</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_1$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>44</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_3$</td>
<td>$C_1$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_3$</td>
<td>$C_1$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>46</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_1$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\ominus$</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_3$</td>
<td>$C_1$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>65</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_1$ violated constraint value $C_1(X^{65}) = 0.570 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>65</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_1$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>66</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_1$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$X^*$</td>
<td>79-82</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$\ell_3$</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$X^*$</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.1: Comparative table for the parabolic tool path objective function vs. iteration number curve (see Figure 4.18).
Note that there are switches between actuator legs $\ell_1$ and $\ell_3$, in being responsible for the maximum magnitude actuator force at labels $\sigma$ and $\omega$. The discontinuities in the objective function gradient vector (4.11) associated with these switches (see Section 4.3.1) are responsible for the unsmooth behavior of objective function convergence graph in these regions. The slight spiked behavior occurring at label $\omega$ can be attributed to inequality constraints $C_1$ and $C_{12}$ being violated during iterations $X^{13} - X^{38}$.

Figure 4.19 shows the corresponding convergence histories for the design variables $X_i$, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, 5$.

![Figure 4.19: Convergence histories of design variables $X_i$, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, 5$.](image)

When comparing Figure 4.18 with Figure 4.19, it is evident that the LFOPC optimization algorithm [64] used here effectively converges to the optimum solution after only 50 optimization iterations. In particular, Table 4.1 shows that the end of phase 0 of the LFOPC-algorithm, the only violated constraint is $C_1$, with an associated constraint function value of $C_1(X^{65}) = 0.570 \times 10^{-3}$ m (0.570 mm). This violation is of such small magnitude that it is negligible.

The optimum solution, corresponding to the specification of extremely accurate convergence tolerances $(\varepsilon_v = 10^{-5}$ for criterion 1; and $\varepsilon_s = 10^{-5}$ for criterion 2 in Section 4.4), is found after 81 optimization iterations and utilizing 53 seconds computational time on a Pentium IV 1.5 GHz computer with 640 MB DDRAM. The specific criterion that the LFOPC-algorithm terminated on is criterion 2, $\varepsilon_s \leq 10^{-5}$ (see Section 4.4). Throughout the choice $\text{DELT} = 0.01$ was used for the LFOPC maximum stepsize parameter (see Appendix C).
Chapter 5

5 DEMONSTRATION OF THE OPTIMUM EXECUTION OF REPRESENTATIVE PRESCRIBED MACHINING PATHS

5.1 Introduction

In this chapter, optimum platform geometries of the re-configurable planar Gough-Stewart platform test-model are determined for different prescribed machining tasks.

The determination of the optimum platform geometries is done using the simulation-based optimization methodology developed in Chapter 4. The feasibility of this approach was illustrated in Chapter 4 by optimizing the geometry of a hypothetical planar Gough-Stewart platform for a simple straight-line prescribed path, taking into consideration the mechanism’s configurational constraints. In applying the methodology to a physically real platform, however, the physical operational constraints specified in Section D.3 are required to prevent mechanical interference. The respective masses and moments of inertia of the seven bodies comprising the physical test-model are also determined in Appendix D (Section D.2.3). These seven bodies are numbered below in Figure 5.1 which corresponds to Figure 2.5 and Figure D.2.
5.4.4 Execution of the circular tool path

The series of photographs shown in Figure 5.18 is of different instants during the execution of the first revolution of the circular tool path.

![Figure 5.18: Execution of the circular tool path.](image)

Figure 5.19 is a close-up of the traced circular tool path, showing that the diameter of the traced circle is approximately 350 mm (35 cm), and that the circle is smoothly traced.
5.5 **Spiral tool path**

5.5.1 **Nodal points and orientation angle**

The spiral tool path is a scaled version of the logarithmic spiral test curve \( \rho = e^{0.1\phi} \) of Section 3.5.4. Using a scale factor of 0.285, the 79 spiral tool path nodal points are as shown in Figure 5.20.

The motion time along the spiral tool path is 93.24 seconds with the specification of \( s_{\text{ALLOW}} = 0.01 \text{ m/s}^2 \), \( v^* = 1.0 \text{ m/min} \) and \( n_{\text{time}} = 5 \) for the use of the OCAS trajectory-planning algorithm.
Figure 5.1: Photograph of the physical planar Gough-Stewart platform test-model.

The moving platform is in contact with the Perspex side panels via the Teflon stabilizers and the pen shown in Figure 5.1. Section D.2.3 shows how the resulting frictional force was experimentally determined. This external frictional force represents the cutting force incorporated in the kinematic and kinetic model of the planar Gough-Stewart machining platform. In fact, the test-model is used here to demonstrate the "fixed workpiece scenario" (see Sections 2.4.1 and 2.6.4.2.1), with specifically a zero tool length ($\eta^*_t = 0$), since the pen is mounted to coincide with the assumed center of mass of the moving platform.

Furthermore, in this chapter, non-trivial prescribed paths are specified for the physical test-model using the OCAS trajectory-planning technique described in Chapter 3. The five different test functions discussed in Section 3.5 are used as prescribed tool paths, to illustrate the application of the proposed optimization methodology to obtain optimum operational geometries.

Once the simulation-based numerical optimization of the physical test-model is done for each prescribed path, the execution of each path follows through the control commands generated by the computer simulation for controlling the required variation of the actuator leg lengths. These lengths are found by solving the three closed-form inverse kinematic equations relating the position and orientation of the moving platform to the actuator leg lengths. The position and orientation of the moving platform follows...
DEMONSTRATION OF THE OPTIMUM EXECUTION OF REPRESENTATIVE PRESCRIBED MACHINING TASKS

directly from the prescribed trajectory, and hence the required actuator leg lengths may easily be determined (see expression (4.10)).

Since the purpose of the test-model is only to demonstrate the new technology, visual inspection is used to verify that each executed path indeed corresponds to the prescribed path. Photographs are included in this chapter to show the successful execution of the prescribed paths, for the respective optimum and feasible settings of the planar machine.

Sections 5.2 – 5.6 respectively deal with the five different prescribed paths all of which are scaled for continuous execution. Section 5.7 shows how the proposed optimization methodology may be applied in the piece-wise execution of the “bigger parabolic tool path”.

5.2 Parabolic tool path

5.2.1 Nodal points and orientation angle

The parabolic test function used in Section 3.5.1, \( y(x) = \frac{x^2}{2} \), was approximated over the x-interval, \( x \in [-2, 2] \), using 29 nodal points as shown in Figure 3.16. Here a scaled mirror image of this quadratic function is used as prescribed path. The mirror image of the original parabola (expression (3.66)) is given by

\[ y(x) = -\frac{x^2}{2} \] (5.1)

over the x-interval, \( x \in [-2, 2] \). Substituting the unscaled x-values into (5.1) gives the unscaled y-values. The scale factor used here is 0.075, and the resulting 27 nodal points are shown in Figure 5.2.

![Figure 5.2: Nodal points used to approximate the parabolic tool path.](image)
For the OCAS trajectory-planning methodology (Chapter 3), the maximum allowable acceleration is limited to 0.01 meter per second square (\( \ddot{s}_{\text{allow}} = 0.01 \text{m/s}^2 \)), and a cutting speed of 1.0 m/min (\( v' = 1.0 \text{ m/min} \)) is specified. With these specifications, the simulated prescribed motion is completed in 29.46 s. The simulation is furthermore carried out with the number of additional intermediate time instants, \( n_{\text{time}} = 5 \) (see Appendix B).

It is also required that the moving platform of the test-model be tangentially orientated with respect to the prescribed curve. With this specification the moving platform orientation angle varies from 63.43° at the starting point \((-0.15, 0.15)\), to \(-63.43°\) at the end point \((0.15, -0.15)\) (see Figure 5.3).

![Figure 5.3: Variation in the orientation angle for the parabolic tool path.](image)

### 5.2.2 Optimization results

A comparison between the initial test-model design and optimum test-model design for the parabolic prescribed tool path is given in Table 5.1, with figure insets 1(a) – 1(d).
DEMONSTRATION OF THE OPTIMUM EXECUTION OF REPRESENTATIVE PRESCRIBED MACHINING TASKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial design</th>
<th>Optimum design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>X</strong> = [0.4, 0.4, -0.4, -0.4, 0.2]</td>
<td><strong>X</strong> = [0.1, 0.19387, -0.47769, -0.18012, 0.113]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Inequality constraint values (see Section D.3):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constraint</th>
<th>Initial Design</th>
<th>Optimal Design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C1(X0) = -0.05</td>
<td>C1(X*) = -0.35</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_2(X^*) = -0.363 \times 10^{-6} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2(X0) = -0.065</td>
<td>C4(X*) = -0.287</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_3(X^*) = -0.27113 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C3(X0) = -0.07</td>
<td>C5(X*) = -0.087</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_4(X^*) = -0.624 \times 10^{-6} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_7(X^*) = -0.10533 )</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_8(X^*) = -0.01481 )</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_5(X^*) = -0.157 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C9(X0) = -0.08</td>
<td>C10(X*) = 0.00045</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_6(X^*) = -0.01780 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_3(X^*) = -0.065 )</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_4(X^*) = -0.287 )</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_7(X^*) = 0.00045 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C11(X0) = 0.07769</td>
<td>C12(X*) = -0.34542</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_8(X^*) = 0.03374 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C13(X0) = -0.14542</td>
<td>C14(X*) = 0.00109</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_9(X^*) = -0.06220 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C15(X0) = -0.00493</td>
<td>C16(X*) = 0.01619</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_{10}(X^*) = -0.34542 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_{11}(X^*) = 0.00045 )</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_{12}(X^*) = -0.34542 )</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_{13}(X^*) = -0.06220 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C17(X0) = 0.01727</td>
<td>C18(X*) = 0.04250</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_{14}(X^*) = -0.287 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C19(X0) = -0.06220</td>
<td>C20(X*) = -0.08449</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_{15}(X^*) = -0.34542 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C21(X0) = -0.07149</td>
<td>C22(X*) = 0.03098</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow C_{16}(X^*) = -0.34542 )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\( \Rightarrow \text{constraint violation} \)

\( \Rightarrow \text{constraint active} \)

Variation of actuator leg lengths along the parabolic tool path:

![Initial design](1(a))

![Optimum design](1(b))

Chapter 5
Variation of actuator forces along the parabolic tool path:

Table 5.1: Comparison between the initial and optimum designs for the parabolic tool path.

Although the initial objective function value $F(X^0) = 22.066$ N is lower than the optimum objective function value $F(X^*) = 31.936$ N, the initial design is infeasible. In fact, nine of the 22 inequality constraints are violated when the parabolic test function is traced with the initial design $X^0$. Table 5.1 lists the initial values of the inequality constraint functions $C_i(X^0)$, $i = 1, 2, 3, ..., 22$, as well as their optimum values $C_i(X^*)$, $i = 1, 2, 3, ..., 22$. The violated inequality constraints associated with the initial design $X^0$ have function values greater than zero, and are indicated by a single arrow $\Rightarrow$ in Table 5.1. Similarly, the active inequality constraints associated with the optimum design $X^*$ have approximately zero function values, and are indicated by a double arrow $\Rightarrow$ in Table 5.1.

The variation in the actuator leg lengths depicted in figure inset 1(a) clearly show that both actuator legs $\ell_1$ and $\ell_3$ initially violate the allowable maximum leg length, explaining the positive constraint function values of $C_7$ and $C_9$ (expression (D.11)). Inequality constraints corresponding to $C_{10}$ and $C_{11}$ (expression (D.12)) are violated even though the allowable minimum leg length is not violated (see figure inset 1(a)). Indeed, these two inequality constraints are violated as a result of the specification of tangential orientation of the moving platform with respect to the parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.3). The remaining violated inequality constraints, corresponding to the positive function values of $C_{14}$, $C_{15}$,
C_{17}, C_{18} and C_{22}, indicate that the parabolic tool path cannot be followed with the initial design X^0, due to mechanical interference (see respective expressions (D.15), (D.17), (D.18), (D.19) and (D.23)).

On the other hand, figure inset 1(b) clearly shows that for the optimum design X^*, the variation in actuator leg lengths as the parabolic tool path is followed, lies within the minimum and maximum allowable lengths. The feasibility of the optimum design X^* is further borne out by the fact that the optimum inequality constraint function values C_i(X^*) , i = 1,2,3,...,22 are all less than, or approximately equal to zero. In particular, the inequality constraints corresponding to C_2, C_6, C_7, C_{10} and C_{11} are considered to be active (see expressions (D.10), (D.11) and (D.12)). The optimum solution is found after 227 optimization iterations and utilizing 6 minutes and 58 seconds computational time on a Pentium IV 1.5 GHz computer with 640 MB DDRAM. LFOPC terminated on criterion 2 (\epsilon_x \leq 10^{-5}) listed in Section 4.4.

5.2.3 Analysis of convergence to optimum

Figure 5.4 shows the convergence history of the objective function.

![Objective function value](image)

**Figure 5.4: Convergence history of the objective function for the parabolic tool path.**

The behavior of the above objective function vs. iteration number curve is of course dependent on the iterative search generated by the LFOPC algorithm in the five dimensional design space (see Figure 4.10). The choice of the initial design X^0 obviously plays an important role in the nature of the convergence history of the objective function. In correspondence with Section 4.5, the initial configuration of the planar machining center is chosen as X^0 = [0.4, 0.4, -0.4, -0.4, 0.2]^T for all the
machining paths investigated in this chapter. Initial design variable values $X_1^0 = 0.4 \text{ m}$, $X_2^0 = 0.4 \text{ m}$ and $X_3^0 = 0.2 \text{ m}$ are in scaled agreement with the geometry of Haug et al.'s [73] planar Gough-Stewart platform. Setting design variables $X_4^0 = -0.4 \text{ m}$ and $X_5^0 = -0.4 \text{ m}$ corresponds to a random choice for the position of the origin of the global Oxy-coordinate system, relative to which the tool path is described, and the kinematic and kinetic analysis (Chapter 2) is done.

**Figure 5.5: Photograph of the initial test-model design $X^0 = [0.4, 0.4, -0.4, -0.4, 0.2]^T$.**

With specific reference to Figure 5.4, the labels $\bigcirc - \bigodot$ are used in Table 5.2 to relate the *iteration number* and *phase* of the LFOPC-algorithm (see Appendix C) to the actuator leg responsible for the *maximum magnitude actuator force* (see Section 4.2.2) and the violated inequality constraints at the indicated regions of the convergence curve.
Table 5.2: Comparative table for the parabolic tool path objective function vs. iteration number curve (see Figure 5.4).
The increase in the objective function value between labels @ and ® in Figure 5.4 is a result of the LFOPC phase-change occurring at iteration number 87 (see Appendix C) at which point the penalty parameter is increased. Furthermore, Table 5.2 shows that the actuator leg responsible for the maximum magnitude actuator force switches from actuator leg \( f_3 \) to \( f_1 \) at label @. It was shown in Section 4.3.1 that a switch in the actuator legs responsible for the maximum magnitude actuator force is associated with a kink in the objective function, and hence a discontinuity in its slope. This results in the spiky behavior of the objective function in these regions.

The switches involving actuator legs \( f_1 \) and \( f_2 \) that occur as the LFOPC-algorithm changes from phase 0 to phase 1 show that the associated design is close to the optimum. Consider figure inset 1(d) showing the variation in actuator forces associated with the optimum design \( X' \). The maximum magnitude of the force in actuator leg \( f_1 \), \( f_1 = 31.936 \text{ N} \) occurring at time instant \( t = 3.97 \text{ s} \), is only slightly larger than the maximum magnitude of the force in actuator leg \( f_2 \), \( f_2 = 28.774 \text{ N} \) occurring at time instant \( t = 29.46 \text{ s} \).

The fact that the final design of phase 0 (iteration number 87 in Table 5.2) is indeed relatively close with respect to feasibility to the optimum design, is evident from the convergence histories of the respective design variables \( X_i \), \( i = 1, 2, ..., 5 \) as shown in Figure 5.6. It is of interest to note that for the design variables the convergence is considerably smoother. In practical terms, convergence is effectively achieved at the end of phase 0 after only 87 iterations where the maximum violated constraint is \( C_7 \) with a function value of \( C_7(X^{87}) = 0.00496 \text{ m} = 4.96 \text{ mm} \).

![Design variables convergence](image.png)

**Figure 5.6**: Convergence histories of design variables \( X_i \), \( i = 1, 2, ..., 5 \) for the parabolic tool path.
5.2.4 Execution of parabolic tool path

Figure 5.7 shows a series of photographs taken at different time instants as the parabolic tool path is traced. The tangential orientation of the moving platform along the curve is clearly visible from the photographs.

A close-up view of the executed parabolic tool path is shown in Figure 5.8. Inspection shows that the actual executed tool path accurately resembles the prescribed tool path (see Figure 5.2). It is evident that the distance between the end points of the traced parabolic tool path is approximately 300 mm (30 cm) and that the traced parabolic tool path is proportionally shaped and smooth in agreement with the prescribed path specified by Figure 5.2.
5.3 Spike tool path

5.3.1 Nodal points and orientation angle

The spike test function of Section 3.5.2, \( y(x) = \frac{1}{1 + x^2} \) (see expression 3.67) was approximated over the x-interval, \( x \in [-2, 2] \), using 27 nodal points. Note that the initial and final nodal points are \( P_0 = (x_0, y_0) = (2, 0.2) \) and \( P_N = (x_N, y_N) = (-2, 0.2) \) respectively.

The spike tool path is a scaled version of the original spike test function using a scale factor of 0.15. In particular, the initial and final nodal points are thus \( P_0 = (x_0, y_0) = (0.3, 0.03) \) and \( P_N = (x_N, y_N) = (-0.3, 0.03) \) respectively. Figure 5.9 shows the 27 nodal points used to approximate the spike tool path.
The OCAS trajectory-planning methodology (Chapter 3) is again used to approximate the spike tool path with $\ddot{s}_{\text{allow}} = 0.01 \, \text{m/s}^2$ and $v^* = 1.0 \, \text{m/min}$ resulting in a total motion time of 41.95 s. The simulation is again done with $n_{\text{time}} = 5$.

As in the case of the parabolic tool path, the moving platform of the test-model must maintain a tangential orientation with respect to the prescribed spike tool path. The variation of the orientation angle [degrees] as the moving platform traces the spike tool path, is depicted in Figure 5.10.

### 5.3.2 Optimization results

The initial and optimum test-model designs for the spike tool path are compared in Table 5.3, with graphical insets 2(a) – 2(d).
**DEMONSTRATION OF THE OPTIMUM EXECUTION OF REPRESENTATIVE PRESCRIBED MACHINING TASKS**

**Initial design**

| \( X^0 = [0.4, 0.4, -0.4, -0.4, 0.2]^T \) | **Optimum design**
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| \( X^* = [0.21174, 0.29788, -0.17937, -0.27835, 0.18509]^T \)

**Inequality constraint values (see Section D.3):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constraint ( C_i(X^0) )</th>
<th>Constraint ( C_i(X^*) )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( C_1(X^0) = -0.05 )</td>
<td>( C_1(X^*) = -0.23826 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_2(X^0) = -0.065 )</td>
<td>( C_2(X^*) = -0.07209 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_3(X^0) = -0.07 )</td>
<td>( C_3(X^*) = -0.1174 )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Initial design**

| Actuator leg lengths along the spike tool path:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( L_1 )</td>
<td>( L_2 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Graph 2(a)" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optimum design**

| Actuator leg lengths along the spike tool path:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( L_1 )</td>
<td>( L_2 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Graph 2(b)" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Variation of actuator leg lengths along the spike tool path:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constraint ( C_i(X^0) )</th>
<th>Constraint ( C_i(X^*) )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( C_4(X^0) = 0.17403 )</td>
<td>( C_4(X^*) = 0.11745 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_5(X^0) = 0.11302 )</td>
<td>( C_5(X^*) = 0.0511 \times 10^{-5} )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[ \Rightarrow \text{constraint violation} \]

\[ \Rightarrow \text{constraint active} \]
Demonstration of the optimum execution of representative prescribed machining tasks.

Variation of actuator forces along the spike tool path:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial design</th>
<th>Optimum design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Graph" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Graph" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.3: Comparison between the initial and optimum designs for the spike tool path.

The violated inequality constraints associated with the *infeasible initial design* correspond to constraint functions $C_7$, $C_9$, $C_9$ and $C_{13}$ (see expressions (D.11) and (D.14)). Again looking at figure inset 2(a), it is evident that all three actuator legs $\ell_1$, $\ell_2$ and $\ell_3$ will violate the maximum allowable actuator leg length if the spike tool path is to be traced with the initial design $X^0$, explaining why the inequality constraint function values $C_7(X^0)$, $C_9(X^0)$, $C_9(X^0)$ are greater than zero. The inequality constraint corresponding to $C_{13}$ prevents the excessive side way movement of the moving platform towards the right hand side as explained in Section D.3.3.4.

Figure inset 2(b) shows that in the case of the *feasible optimum design* $X^*$, the variation in the actuator legs lies within the specified minimum and maximum allowable bounds. The active constraints correspond to $C_7$, $C_{13}$, $C_{16}$ and $C_{17}$ (see respective expressions (D.11), (D.14), (D.17) and (D.18)). The optimum solution is found after 156 optimization iterations and utilizing 4 minutes and 53 seconds computational time on a Pentium IV 1.5 GHz computer with 640 MB DDRAM. LFOPC again terminated on criterion 2 ($\varepsilon_s \leq 10^{-5}$).
5.3.3 Analysis of convergence to optimum

Figure 5.11 shows the convergence history of the objective function.

![Objective function value graph](image)

Figure 5.11: Convergence history of the objective function for the spike tool path.

Labels ① – ⑤ in Figure 5.11 are used in Table 5.4 to relate the iteration number and phase of the LFOPC-algorithm (see Appendix C) to the actuator leg responsible for the maximum magnitude actuator force (see Section 4.2.2) and the violated inequality constraints in the respectively indicated regions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Labels</th>
<th>Iteration No.</th>
<th>LFOPC-Phase</th>
<th>Act. leg</th>
<th>Violated Inequality Constraints</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X⁰</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>ℓ²</td>
<td>C₇, C₈, C₉, C₁₃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>①</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>ℓ²</td>
<td>C₇, C₈, C₀, C₁₃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>ℓ¹</td>
<td>C₇, C₈, C₁₃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>ℓ¹</td>
<td>C₇, C₈, C₁₃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>②</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>ℓ¹</td>
<td>C₇, C₁₃, C₁₆, C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>31</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>ℓ¹</td>
<td>C₇, C₁₃, C₁₆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>③</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>ℓ¹</td>
<td>C₇, C₁₆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>ℓ¹</td>
<td>C₇, C₁₆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>41</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>ℓ¹</td>
<td>C₇, C₁₆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>ℓ¹</td>
<td>C₇</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 5.4: Comparative table for the spike tool path objective function vs. iteration number curve (see Figure 5.11).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Iteration</th>
<th>LFOPC phase-change</th>
<th>Objective Function Value</th>
<th>Constraint Violation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₆ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₆ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₆ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₆ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₆ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₆ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₆ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₆ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₆ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₆ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₆ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₆ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₆ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₆ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112–114</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>C₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>C₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₆ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₆ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₆ C₁₇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>C₇ C₁₃ C₁₆ C₁₇ (active)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first LFOPC phase-change from phase 0 to phase 1 occurs at iteration number 92, hence the resulting increase in the objective function value between labels ④ and ⑤ in Figure 5.11 as the penalty parameter is increased at the start of phase 1. The spiky behavior of the objective function value at labels ① and ④ can again be explained by the switch in the actuator leg responsible for the maximum magnitude actuator force, that occur in these regions.
The convergence histories of the respective design variables $x_i, i = 1, 2, ..., 5$ are shown in Figure 5.12. Again effective convergence with respect to feasibility is obtained at the end of phase 0 after only 92 iterations with the maximum violated constraint value $C_3(X^*) = 0.00436 \text{ m} = 4.36 \text{ mm}$. Note also, that there is a switch between actuator legs $\ell_1$ and $\ell_2$ responsible for the maximum magnitude actuator force at iteration number 88, just before the end of phase 0. This corresponds to the behavior of the actuator leg forces associated with the optimum design $X^*$ (figure inset 2(d)). The maximum magnitude of the force in actuator leg $\ell_1$, $f_1 = 35.160 \text{ N}$ occurring at time instant $t = 41.95 \text{ s}$, is only slightly larger than the maximum magnitude of the force in actuator leg $\ell_2$, $f_2 = 33.838 \text{ N}$ occurring at time instant $t = 1.71 \text{ s}$.

![Design variables convergence history](image)

**Figure 5.12:** Convergence histories of design variables $X_i, i = 1, 2, ..., 5$ for the spike tool path.

### 5.3.4 Execution of the spike tool path

Figure 5.13 shows a series of photographs taken at different time instants as the spike tool path is traced. Similarly to the parabolic tool path, the spike tool path is executed with a tangentially orientated moving platform (see Figure 5.10).
The close-up view of the executed spike tool path (Figure 5.14) shows that the traced spike tool path closely resembles the prescribed spike tool path specified by Figure 5.9.
5.4 Circular tool path

5.4.1 Nodal points and orientation angle

The diameter of the circular tool path is 0.35 m and the circle is centered at \((x, y) = (0, 0)\). Hence the path is defined by

\[x^2 + y^2 = (0.175)^2\]  

(5.2)

In agreement with the circular test curve of Section 3.5.3, the nodal points \(\{P_i = (x_i, y_i), i = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N\}\) of the circular tool path are specified using corresponding sweep angles \(\beta_i \in [0', 720']\), where the sweep angle is measured clockwise from the positive x-axis. For any specific sweep angle \(\beta_i, i = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N\), the corresponding \(x\)- and \(y\)-values are given by \(x_i = 0.175\cos \beta_i\), and \(y_i = 0.175\sin \beta_i\) respectively. The sequence of sweep angles \(\{\beta_i\}\) is chosen such that starting at \(\beta = 0'\), two CCW revolutions are followed. A total of 79 nodal points cover the two revolutions. The first revolution where \(\beta \in [0', 360']\) is shown on the left-hand side of Figure 5.15, and the second revolution, where \(\beta \in [360', 720']\) is shown on the right-hand side of Figure 5.15.

![Figure 5.15: Nodal points used to approximate the two revolutions of the circular tool path.](image)

The total time required to complete the two revolutions is 135.61 s, using the OCAS trajectory-planning methodology with \(\ddot{s}_{\text{move}} = 0.01 \text{ m/s}^2, v^* = 1.0 \text{ m/min}\) and \(n_{\text{time}} = 5\).

Other than in the cases of the parabolic and spike tool paths, a fixed moving platform orientation \(\phi_i = 0\) is maintained as the circular tool path is traced.
5.4.2 Optimization results

A comparison between the initial and optimum test-model designs for the circular tool path is shown in Table 5.5, with figure insets 3(a) – 3(d).

Note that the kinematics and kinetics of the two revolutions are not identical. The distribution of the nodal points is specifically chosen to accommodate acceleration at the start of the first revolution, and deceleration at the end of the second revolution (see Figure 5.15). The effect of this on figure insets 3(a) – 3(d) are the slight differences between the respective curves at time instants \( t = 0 \) s and \( t = 135.61 \) s.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial design</th>
<th>Optimum design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( X^0 = [0.4, 0.4, -0.4, -0.4, 0.2] )</td>
<td>( X^* = [0.34476, 0.39829, -0.28487, -0.36676, 0.25238] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_1(X^0) = -0.05 )</td>
<td>( C_1(X^*) = -0.10524 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_2(X^0) = -0.065 )</td>
<td>( C_2(X^*) = -0.06671 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_3(X^0) = -0.07 )</td>
<td>( C_3(X^*) = -0.01762 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \rightarrow C_4(X^0) = 0.09721 )</td>
<td>( C_4(X^*) = -0.13938 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \rightarrow C_5(X^0) = 0.05 )</td>
<td>( C_5(X^*) = 0.03487 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_6(X^0) = -0.15 )</td>
<td>( C_6(X^*) = 0.326 \times 10^{-3} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_7(X^0) = -0.01 )</td>
<td>( C_7(X^*) = -0.00514 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_8(X^0) = -0.15 )</td>
<td>( C_8(X^*) = -0.24476 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_9(X^0) = -0.15 )</td>
<td>( C_9(X^*) = -0.28529 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{10}(X^0) = -0.03130 )</td>
<td>( C_{10}(X^*) = -0.04408 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{11}(X^0) = -0.03130 )</td>
<td>( C_{11}(X^*) = -0.00157 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{12}(X^0) = -0.03130 )</td>
<td>( C_{12}(X^*) = -0.00911 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{13}(X^0) = -0.03130 )</td>
<td>( C_{13}(X^*) = -0.06916 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{14}(X^0) = -0.03130 )</td>
<td>( C_{14}(X^*) = -0.00157 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{15}(X^0) = -0.03130 )</td>
<td>( C_{15}(X^*) = -0.00911 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{16}(X^0) = -0.04642 )</td>
<td>( C_{16}(X^*) = -0.114 \times 10^{-4} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{17}(X^0) = -0.05081 )</td>
<td>( C_{17}(X^*) = -0.02786 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{18}(X^0) = -0.06975 )</td>
<td>( C_{18}(X^*) = -0.04462 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{19}(X^0) = -0.08546 )</td>
<td>( C_{19}(X^*) = -0.01857 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \rightarrow ) constraint violation</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow ) constraint active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{20}(X^0) = -0.06502 )</td>
<td>( C_{20}(X^*) = -0.00119 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{21}(X^0) = -0.06502 )</td>
<td>( C_{21}(X^*) = -0.08240 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{22}(X^0) = -0.06502 )</td>
<td>( C_{22}(X^*) = -0.08551 )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Variation of actuator leg lengths along the circular tool path:

![Graph showing variation of actuator leg lengths](image)

**Table 5.5: Comparison between the initial and optimum designs for the circular tool path.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Initial design</th>
<th>Optimum design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L1, L2, L3</td>
<td>L1, L2, L3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lmin</td>
<td>Lmin</td>
<td>Lmax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lmax</td>
<td>Lmax</td>
<td>Lmax</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3(a) 3(b)

Variation of actuator forces along the circular tool path:

![Graph showing variation of actuator forces](image)

**3(c) 3(d)**

\[ F(X^0) = 26.976 \text{ N} \]

Actuator leg 2

\[ F(X^*) = 21.431 \text{ N} \]

Actuator leg 2

Starting with the infeasible initial design \( X^0 \) (see the unallowable variation in actuator leg lengths in inset 3(a), and associated positive inequality constraint function values \( C_7(X^0), C_8(X^0) \) and \( C_9(X^0) \)), the optimum design \( X^* \) is found in 73 optimization iterations. This requires 6 minutes and 35 seconds computational time on a Pentium IV 1.5 GHz computer with 640 MB DDRAM. The LFOPC-algorithm again terminated on criterion 2 \( (\varepsilon_x \leq 10^{-5}) \) listed in Section 4.4.
Note that the absolute values of the two active constraints, identified from the positive values of $C_8(X^*)$ and $C_{16}(X^*)$ (expressions (D.11) and (D.17)) are at least one order of magnitude larger than the absolute values of the active constraints for the optimization of the parabolic and spike test functions. In spite of the fact that inequality constraint $C_8$ is violated by $0.326 \times 10^{-3}$ m ($0.326$ mm), this violation lies well within the minimum safety margin of $5$ mm that was used during the formulation of the inequality constraints.

The effectiveness of the chosen "maximum magnitude actuator force" objective function (see Section 4.2.2) is borne out by comparing figure insets 3(c) and 3(d). In figure inset 3(c) showing the actuator force variations for the initial design $X^0$, actuator force $f_2$ is predominant with significant elevations at time instants $t = 6.23$ s, $t = 72.20$ s and $t = 132.45$ s. On the other hand, the actuator force variations associated with the optimum design $X^*$ in figure inset 3(d) shows a much more level distribution in terms of the maximum forces in all three actuator legs.

### 5.4.3 Analysis of convergence to optimum

Figure 5.16 shows the convergence history of the objective function.

![Figure 5.16: Convergence history of the objective function for the circular tool path.](image)

**Figure 5.16**: Convergence history of the objective function for the circular tool path.
Labels ①—④ in Figure 5.16 are used in Table 5.6 to relate the behavior of the convergence curve of the objective function in the respective indicated regions to the iteration number and phase of the LFOPC-algorithm, the actuator leg responsible for the maximum magnitude actuator force and the violated inequality constraints.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Labels</th>
<th>Iteration No.</th>
<th>LFOPC-Phase</th>
<th>Act. leg</th>
<th>Violated Inequality Constraints</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X′0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_7, C_8, C_9 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>①</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_{18} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_{18} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_{18} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>②</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_8, C_{16} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_1 )</td>
<td>( C_8, C_{16}, C_{20} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_1 )</td>
<td>( C_8, C_{16}, C_{20} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_1 )</td>
<td>( C_8, C_{16} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>③</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_1 )</td>
<td>( C_8, C_{16}, C_{20} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_8, C_{16}, C_{20} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>29</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_8, C_{16}, C_{20} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>④</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_8, C_{16}, C_{20} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>31</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_8, C_{16}, C_{20} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>39</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_8, C_{16}, C_{20} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_8, C_{16} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>④</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_1 )</td>
<td>( C_8, C_{16}, C_{20} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_8, C_{16} ) maximum violated constraint value ( C_{16}(X^{42}) = 0.00110 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>43</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_1 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DEMONSTRATION OF THE OPTIMUM EXECUTION OF REPRESENTATIVE PRESCRIBED MACHINING TASKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phase-changes</th>
<th>LFOPC</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_1 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} )</td>
<td>( C_{16}(X^{a2}) = 0.936 \times 10^{-3} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} )</td>
<td>(only active constraint)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

see footnote \(^{a}\) at the end of Table 5.6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phase-changes</th>
<th>LFOPC</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>( \ell_2 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{a}\) Note that at the end of phase 1 only one constraint, corresponding to \( C_{16} \), is identified to be active. In the subsequent stringent enforcement of this constraint in phase 2, the constraint corresponding to \( C_8 \) also incidentally becomes active. This explains the relative large value (but nevertheless of insignificant magnitude) of \( C_8(X^*) \) in Table 5.5. A diagrammatical representation of the situation that arises is sketched below

As is evident from the convergence histories of the \( X_i (i = 1,2,...,5) \), this distance \( \| X^* - X_{a2}^* \| \) is extremely small (negligible) and does not affect the reliability and accuracy of the computed solution.

Table 5.6: Comparative table for the circular tool path objective function vs. iteration number curve (see Figure 5.16).
A switch in the actuator leg responsible for the maximum magnitude actuator force occurs in the vicinity of label ③. This again explains the non-smooth nature of the objective function vs. iteration number curve in this area (see Figure 5.16).

Note that since the initial design only violates the "allowable maximum leg length" inequality constraints (expression (D.11)), it may be possible to intuitively adjust the position of the prescribed tool path relative to the position of the planar machine in order to achieve feasibility. In terms of the set of design variables, this implies that only two design variables, X_3 and X_4, need to be changed until the prescribed circular tool path is feasibly traced. Although this might seem to be an easier option, the inherent danger of this approach is the unknown occurrence of mechanical interference. This danger is evident from the fact that the optimum design X^* found by LFOPC is associated with the two active constraints:

- C_8 an "allowable maximum leg length" inequality constraint (expression (D.11)), and
- C_16 a "mechanical interference" inequality constraint (expression (D.17)).

The convergence histories of the respective design variables X_i, i = 1,2,...,5 are shown in Figure 5.17. Practical convergence (both with respect to feasibility and optimum objective function value), has already been achieved as early as iteration 42 with a maximum violated constraint function value of C_16(X^{42}) = 0.00110 m (1.10 mm), and with the associated design vector given by X^{42}=[0.34901, 0.39819, -0.28277, -0.36638, 0.25303]^T. Note that no significant changes in the values of the design variables occur after iteration 42 as can be seen from the optimum values of the design variables, X^*=[0.34476, 0.39829, -0.28487, -0.36676, 0.25238]^T.

![Figure 5.17: Convergence histories of design variables X_i, i = 1,2,...,5 for the circular tool path.](image)
5.4.4 *Execution of the circular tool path*

The series of photographs shown in Figure 5.18 is of different instants during the execution of the first revolution of the circular tool path.

*Figure 5.18: Execution of the circular tool path.*

Figure 5.19 is a close-up of the traced circular tool path, showing that the diameter of the traced circle is approximately 350 mm (35 cm), and that the circle is smoothly traced.
DEMONSTRATION OF THE OPTIMUM EXECUTION OF REPRESENTATIVE PRESCRIBED MACHINING TASKS

5.19: View of the executed circular tool path.

5.5 Spiral tool path

5.5.1 Nodal points and orientation angle

The spiral tool path is a scaled version of the logarithmic spiral test curve \( \rho = e^{0.1 \phi} \) of Section 3.5.4. Using a scale factor of 0.285, the 79 spiral tool path nodal points are as shown in Figure 5.20.

The motion time along the spiral tool path is 93.24 seconds with the specification of \( s_{\text{ALLOW}} = 0.01 \text{ m/s}^2 \), \( v^* = 1.0 \text{ m/min} \) and \( n_{\text{time}} = 5 \) for the use of the OCAS trajectory-planning algorithm.
Figure 5.20: Nodal points used to approximate the spiral tool path.

As for the circular tool path, the spiral tool path is traced with a fixed moving platform orientation \( \phi_1 = 0 \).

### 5.5.2 Optimization results

The initial and optimum test-model designs for the spiral tool path are compared in Table 5.7 (with figure insets 4(a) – 4(d)).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial design</th>
<th>Optimum design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( X^0 = [0.4, 0.4, -0.4, -0.4, 0.2]^T )</td>
<td>( X^* = [0.32686, 0.34053, -0.26137, -0.40930, 0.15538]^T )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Inequality constraint values (see Section D.3):

- \( C_1(X^0) = -0.05 \), \( C_2(X^0) = -0.3 \), \( C_3(X^0) = -0.07 \), \( C_4(X^0) = -0.287 \), \( C_5(X^0) = -0.07 \), \( C_6(X^0) = -0.087 \), \( \rightarrow C_7(X^0) = 0.09323 \), \( \rightarrow C_8(X^0) = 0.10988 \), \( \rightarrow C_9(X^0) = 0.05420 \), \( C_{10}(X^0) = -0.19441 \), \( C_{11}(X^0) = -0.19441 \), \( C_{12}(X^0) = -0.17684 \), \( \rightarrow C_{13}(X^0) = -0.03220 \), \( C_{14}(X^0) = -0.03972 \), \( C_{15}(X^0) = -0.05697 \), \( C_{16}(X^0) = -0.03865 \), \( C_{17}(X^0) = -0.06113 \), \( C_{18}(X^0) = -0.06216 \), \( C_{19}(X^0) = -0.06763 \), \( C_{20}(X^0) = -0.09095 \), \( C_{21}(X^0) = -0.09526 \), \( C_{22}(X^0) = -0.06325 \), \( \rightarrow \) constraint violation |
| \( C_1(X^*) = -0.12314 \), \( C_2(X^*) = -0.22686 \), \( C_3(X^*) = -0.11462 \), \( C_4(X^*) = -0.22753 \), \( C_5(X^*) = -0.11462 \), \( C_6(X^*) = -0.04238 \), \( \rightarrow C_7(X^*) = 0.347 \times 10^{-5} \), \( C_8(X^*) = -0.06128 \), \( \rightarrow C_9(X^*) = 0.07828 \), \( C_{10}(X^*) = -0.05578 \), \( C_{11}(X^*) = -0.05578 \), \( C_{12}(X^*) = -0.28217 \), \( \rightarrow \) constraint violation |

- \( \Rightarrow C_{13}(X^*) = 0.108 \times 10^{-5} \), \( \Rightarrow C_{14}(X^*) = 0.700 \times 10^{-6} \), \( \Rightarrow C_{15}(X^*) = -0.03094 \), \( C_{16}(X^*) = -0.03204 \), \( \rightarrow C_{17}(X^*) = -0.02269 \), \( C_{18}(X^*) = -0.00256 \), \( \rightarrow C_{19}(X^*) = -0.06875 \), \( C_{20}(X^*) = -0.11837 \), \( \rightarrow C_{21}(X^*) = 0.345 \times 10^{-5} \), \( C_{22}(X^*) = -0.06792 \), \( \Rightarrow \) constraint active |
DEMONSTRATION OF THE OPTIMUM EXECUTION OF REPRESENTATIVE PRESCRIBED MACHINING TASKS

Variation of actuator leg lengths along the spiral tool path:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial design</th>
<th>Optimum design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Initial design graph" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Optimum design graph" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Variation of actuator forces along the spiral tool path:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial design</th>
<th>Optimum design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Initial design graph" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Optimum design graph" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.7: Comparison between the initial and optimum designs for the spiral tool path.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Initial design</th>
<th>Optimum design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F(X₀)</td>
<td>28.914 N</td>
<td>22.409 N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actuator leg 1</td>
<td>Actuator leg 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The initial design is again infeasible (see the variation in actuator leg lengths in inset 4(a) and the corresponding positive inequality constraint function values C₇(X₀), C₈(X₀) and C₉(X₀)). The feasible optimum design (see figure inset 4(b)) is associated with active constraints corresponding to C₇, C₁₃, C₁₄ and C₂₁ (see respective expressions (D.10), (D.14), (D.15) and (D.22)). Note that
corresponding to the circular tool path, the optimum variation in actuator forces of figure inset 4(d) shows a level distribution in terms of the maximum forces in all three actuator legs.

The optimum design, \( \mathbf{X}^* \), is found in 133 optimization iterations and utilizing 11 minutes and 46 seconds computational time on a Pentium IV 1.5 GHz computer with 640 MB DDRAM. As before, LFOPC terminated on criterion 2 (\( \epsilon_x \leq 10^{-5} \)) listed in Section 4.4.

5.5.3 Analysis of convergence to optimum

Figure 5.21 shows the convergence history of the objective function.

![Convergence history of the objective function for the spiral tool path.](image)

Figure 5.21: Convergence history of the objective function for the spiral tool path.

Table 5.8 with labels \( \circ \) – \( \circ \) relate the behavior of the convergence curve of the objective function to iteration number, the LFOPC phases, the actuator leg responsible for the maximum magnitude actuator force, and the violated inequality constraints in the respectively indicated regions of the curve.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Labels</th>
<th>Iteration No.</th>
<th>LFOPC-Phase</th>
<th>Act. leg</th>
<th>Violated Inequality Constraints</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$X^0$</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_7 \quad C_8 \quad C_9$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_{13} \quad C_{21}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_{13} \quad C_{14} \quad C_{21}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_{13} \quad C_{14} \quad C_{21}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_{13} \quad C_{14} \quad C_{21}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>28-31</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_7 \quad C_{13} \quad C_{14}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_7 \quad C_{13} \quad C_{14} \quad C_{21}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_2$</td>
<td>$C_7 \quad C_{13} \quad C_{14} \quad C_{21}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_7 \quad C_{14} \quad C_{21}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_7 \quad C_{13} \quad C_{14} \quad C_{21}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_7 \quad C_{13} \quad C_{14} \quad C_{21}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_7 \quad C_{13} \quad C_{14} \quad C_{21}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>79</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_7 \quad C_{13} \quad C_{14} \quad C_{21}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>79</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_7 \quad C_{13} \quad C_{14} \quad C_{21}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87-89</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>none</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_7$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_7 \quad C_{13} \quad C_{14} \quad C_{21}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_7 \quad C_{13} \quad C_{14} \quad C_{21}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_7 \quad C_{13} \quad C_{14} \quad C_{21}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>127</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_7 \quad C_{14} \quad C_{21}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>133</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>$\ell_1$</td>
<td>$C_7 \quad C_{13} \quad C_{14} \quad C_{21}$ (active)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.8: Comparative table for the spiral tool path objective function vs. iteration number curve (see Figure 5.21)

Note that the actuator leg responsible for the maximum magnitude actuator force switches between $\ell_1$ and $\ell_2$ in the vicinity of label $\varnothing$.

The convergence histories of the respective design variables $X_i$, $i=1,2,...,5$ are shown in Figure 5.22. Again convergence (with respect to feasibility and objective function value), is effectively achieved at

*Chapter 5* 190
the end of phase 0, after 79 iterations with the maximum violated constraint value
\( C_{21}(X^{79}) = 0.00316 \text{ m (3.16 mm).} \)

![Design variables](image)

**Figure 5.22:** Convergence histories of design variables \( X_i, i = 1,2,\ldots,5 \) for the spiral tool path.

### 5.5.4 Execution of the spiral tool path

The series of five photographs in Figure 5.23 depicts the tracing of the spiral tool path with a horizontally orientated moving platform \( (\phi_1 = 0) \).
The close-up view of the executed spiral tool path in Figure 5.24 shows its relative size and proportional shape. For all practical purposes the executed path corresponds accurately and smoothly to the spiral tool path prescribed by Figure 5.20.
5.6 Treble clef tool path

5.6.1 Nodal points and orientation angle

The treble clef tool path used here is a scaled version of the treble clef test curve of Section 3.5.5. Figure 5.25 shows the 49 scaled nodal points generated with a scale factor of 0.00285.

![Figure 5.25: Nodal points used to approximate the treble clef tool path.](image)

The OCAS trajectory-planning methodology is again utilized here with the specification of $\ddot{s}_{\text{allow}} = 0.01 \text{ m/s}^2$, $v^* = 1.0 \text{ m/min}$ and $n_{\text{time}} = 5$, resulting in a total motion time along the treble clef tool path of 73.28 seconds.

The treble clef tool path is also traced with a fixed moving platform orientation $\phi_i = 0$. 

---

*Chapter 5*  

---
5.6.2 Optimization results

The initial and optimum test-model designs for the treble clef tool path are compared in Table 5.9.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial design</th>
<th>Optimum design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$X^o = [0.4, 0.4, -0.4, -0.4, 0.2]^T$</td>
<td>$X^* = [0.42327, 0.34561, -0.08380, -0.30386, 0.25886]^T$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Inequality constraint values (see Section D.3):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constraint</th>
<th>Initial</th>
<th>Optimum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$C_i(X^o)$</td>
<td>$-0.05$</td>
<td>$-0.02673$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_2(X^o)$</td>
<td>$-0.065$</td>
<td>$-0.11939$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_3(X^o)$</td>
<td>$-0.07$</td>
<td>$-0.01114$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_4(X^o)$</td>
<td>$0.33349$</td>
<td>$-0.211 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_5(X^o)$</td>
<td>$0.28228$</td>
<td>$-0.04101$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_6(X^o)$</td>
<td>$-0.32755$</td>
<td>$-0.01136$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_7(X^o)$</td>
<td>$-0.0425$</td>
<td>$-0.07261$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_8(X^o)$</td>
<td>$-0.07431$</td>
<td>$-0.03426$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_9(X^o)$</td>
<td>$-0.11013$</td>
<td>$-0.09483$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Variation of actuator leg lengths along the treble clef tool path:

Initial design

Optimum design

Chapter 5
Variation of actuator forces along the treble clef tool path:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial design</th>
<th>Optimum design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Actuator forces [N]</td>
<td>Actuator leg 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$F(X^0) = 29.586 \text{ N}$</td>
<td>Actuator leg 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$F(X^*) = 20.715 \text{ N}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5(c) 5(d)

Table 5.9: Comparison between the initial and optimum designs for the treble clef tool path.

The initial design is severely infeasible (see the unallowable variations in actuator leg lengths shown in inset 5(a) and which correspond to the positive inequality constraint function values $C_7(X^0)$, $C_8(X^0)$ and $C_9(X^0)$). The optimum and feasible (see inset 5(b)) design $X^*$ with active inequality constraints corresponding to $C_7$ and $C_{16}$, and a level maximum magnitude actuator force distribution (see inset 5(d)) is found in 127 optimization iterations and utilizing 6 minutes and 57 seconds computational time on a Pentium IV 1.5 GHz computer with 640 MB DDRAM. Once again, LFOPC terminated on criterion 2 ($\varepsilon_x \leq 10^{-5}$) listed in Section 4.4.
5.6.3 **Analysis of convergence to optimum**

Figure 5.26 shows the convergence history of the objective function.

![Convergence history of the objective function](image)

*Figure 5.26: Convergence history of the objective function for the treble clef tool path.*

The relatively smooth convergence graph of the objective function value shown in Figure 5.26 relates the LFOPC phases, actuator leg responsible for the maximum magnitude actuator force, and violated inequality constraints as indicated in Table 5.10.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Labels</th>
<th>Iteration No.</th>
<th>LFOPC-Phase</th>
<th>Act. leg</th>
<th>Violated Inequality Constraints</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$X^0$</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_2$</td>
<td>$C_7$ $C_8$ $C_9$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_2$</td>
<td>$C_7$ $C_{14}$ $C_{15}$ $C_{16}$ $C_{18}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_2$</td>
<td>$C_7$ $C_{14}$ $C_{16}$ $C_{18}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>37</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_3$</td>
<td>$C_7$ $C_{14}$ $C_{16}$ $C_{18}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>38</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_2$</td>
<td>$C_7$ $C_{14}$ $C_{15}$ $C_{16}$ $C_{18}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>39</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_3$</td>
<td>$C_7$ $C_{14}$ $C_{15}$ $C_{16}$ $C_{18}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_3$</td>
<td>$C_7$ $C_{14}$ $C_{18}$ maximum violated constraint value $C_{18}(X^{40}) = 0.02568$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>41</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\ell_3$</td>
<td>$C_7$ $C_{14}$ $C_{16}$ $C_{18}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DEMONSTRATION OF THE OPTIMUM EXECUTION OF REPRESENTATIVE PRESCRIBED MACHINING TASKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LFOPC phase-changes</th>
<th>84</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>( \ell_3 )</th>
<th>( C_7 )</th>
<th>( C_{16} )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>85</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_3 )</td>
<td>( C_7 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>maximum violated constraint value</td>
<td>( C_{16}(X^{84}) = 0.00220 )</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>85</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>( \ell_3 )</td>
<td>( C_7 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>86</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>( \ell_3 )</td>
<td>( C_7 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>87</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>( \ell_3 )</td>
<td>( C_7 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( X^* )</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>( \ell_3 )</td>
<td>( C_7 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} ) (active)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.10: Comparative table for the treble clef tool path objective function vs. iteration number curve (see Figure 5.26).

Note that a switch from \( \ell_2 \) to \( \ell_1 \) as the actuator leg responsible for the maximum magnitude actuator force occurs in the vicinity of label ⑨.

The convergence histories of the respective design variables \( X_i, i = 1,2,...,5 \) are shown in Figure 5.27. Here the convergence of the design variables is significantly more sluggish, requiring about 100 iterations to converge, compared to the relatively fast and sharp convergence of the objective function value within 40 iterations. Even though, after 40 iterations the objective function value \( (F(X^{40}) = 20.747 \text{ N}) \) is close to the optimum objective function value \( (F(X^*) = 20.715 \text{ N}) \), the maximum violated constraint function value, \( C_{18}(X^{40}) = 0.02568 \) m, shows that this is still an infeasible design due to the occurrence of mechanical interference (see expression (D.19)). The corresponding values of the design variables are \( X^{40} = [0.41543, 0.39816, -0.08308, 0.33817, 0.21923]^T \). Significant further changes occur in the values of design variables \( X_2, X_4 \) and \( X_5 \) between iterations 40 and 100 (\( X^{100} = [0.42319, 0.34551, -0.08406, -0.30402, 0.25886]^T \)). However, after phase 0 of the LFOPC-algorithm has terminated (iteration number 85), the maximum violated constraint function value is only 2.20 mm (\( C_{16}(X^{85}) = 0.00220 \) m), which is negligible for all practical purposes and \( X^{85} \) may be taken as an effective optimum design.
DEMONSTRATION OF THE OPTIMUM EXECUTION OF REPRESENTATIVE PRESCRIBED MACHINING TASKS

Table 5.10: Comparative table for the treble cleft tool path objective function vs. iteration number curve (see Figure 5.26).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LFOPC phase-changes</th>
<th>84</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>( \ell_3 )</th>
<th>( C_7 )</th>
<th>( C_{16} )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>85</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>( \ell_3 )</td>
<td>( C_7 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>85</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>( \ell_3 )</td>
<td>( C_7 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>86</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>( \ell_3 )</td>
<td>( C_7 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>86</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>( \ell_3 )</td>
<td>( C_7 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>87</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>( \ell_3 )</td>
<td>( C_7 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X*</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>( \ell_3 )</td>
<td>( C_7 )</td>
<td>( C_{16} ) (active)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that a switch from \( \ell_2 \) to \( \ell_3 \) as the actuator leg responsible for the maximum magnitude actuator force occurs in the vicinity of label \( \Theta \).

The convergence histories of the respective design variables \( X_i \), \( i = 1,2,\ldots,5 \) are shown in Figure 5.27. Here the convergence of the design variables is significantly more sluggish, requiring about 100 iterations to converge, compared to the relatively fast and sharp convergence of the objective function value within 40 iterations. Even though, after 40 iterations the objective function value \( (F(X^{40}) = 20.747 \text{N}) \) is close to the optimum objective function value \( (F(X^*) = 20.715 \text{N}) \), the maximum violated constraint function value, \( C_{18}(X^{40}) = 0.02568 \text{m} \), shows that this is still an infeasible design due to the occurrence of mechanical interference (see expression (D.19)). The corresponding values of the design variables are \( X^{40} = [0.41543, 0.39816, -0.08308, -0.33817, 0.21923]^T \). Significant further changes occur in the values of design variables \( X_2 \), \( X_4 \) and \( X_5 \) between iterations 40 and 100 (\( X^{100} = [0.42319, 0.34551, -0.08406, -0.30402, 0.25886]^T \)). However, after phase 0 of the LFOPC-algorithm has terminated (iteration number 85), the maximum violated constraint function value is only \( 2.20 \text{mm} \) \( (C_{16}(X^{85}) = 0.00220 \text{m}) \), which is negligible for all practical purposes and \( X^{85} \) may be taken as an effective optimum design.

Chapter 5
Figure 5.27: Convergence histories of design variables $X_i, i = 1, 2, ..., 5$ for the treble clef tool path.

5.6.4 Execution of the treble clef tool path.

The four photographs grouped in Figure 5.28 were taken at different time instants along the actually traced treble clef tool path. Note that the moving platform remains horizontal ($\phi_i = 0$) during the execution of the path.

Figure 5.28: Execution of the treble clef tool path.
A close-up view of the executed treble clef tool path is shown in Figure 5.29, for comparison with the prescribed nodal points shown in Figure 5.25. Clearly the path is accurately traced with no practically significant differences in size and proportion between the executed and prescribed tool paths.

Figure 5.29: Close-up view of the executed treble clef tool path.

5.7 Bigger parabolic tool path

All of the above tool paths are scaled down versions of those represented by the original test functions discussed in Section 3.5. In each instance, the proposed optimization approach determined a feasible design of the adjustable planar machine, with which the (scaled) prescribed tool path could be continuously traced. In general, however, a feasible design may not exist for a particular prescribed path, and thus it cannot be continuously traced. In this event, user intervention is required to divide the
5.7.1.2 Optimization results

Whenever the LFOPC-algorithm cannot find an optimum design that is feasible, it computes a "best" compromised design corresponding to that with least possible constraint violation, and presents it as the optimum solution. A comparison between the initial test-model design and the compromised optimum test-model design for the bigger parabolic prescribed tool path is given in Table 5.11, with figure insets 6(a) - 6(d).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial design</th>
<th>Optimum compromised design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \mathbf{X}^0 = [0.4, 0.4, -0.4, -0.4, 0.2]^T )</td>
<td>( \mathbf{X}^* = [0.09643, 0.11018, -0.51561, -0.10841, 0.11015]^T )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inequality constraint values (see Section D.3):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( C_1 (\mathbf{X}^0) = -0.05 ) ( C_2 (\mathbf{X}^0) = -0.3 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_3 (\mathbf{X}^0) = -0.065 ) ( C_4 (\mathbf{X}^0) = -0.287 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_5 (\mathbf{X}^0) = -0.07 ) ( C_6 (\mathbf{X}^0) = -0.087 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \rightarrow C_7 (\mathbf{X}^0) = 0.11077 ) ( C_8 (\mathbf{X}^0) = -0.02581 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_9 (\mathbf{X}^0) = -0.00648 ) ( \rightarrow C_{10} (\mathbf{X}^0) = 0.12769 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \rightarrow C_{11} (\mathbf{X}^0) = 0.12769 ) ( C_{12} (\mathbf{X}^0) = -0.29548 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{13} (\mathbf{X}^0) = -0.09548 ) ( \rightarrow C_{14} (\mathbf{X}^0) = 0.02800 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \rightarrow C_{15} (\mathbf{X}^0) = 0.03046 ) ( \rightarrow C_{16} (\mathbf{X}^0) = 0.04159 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \rightarrow C_{17} (\mathbf{X}^0) = 0.05454 ) ( \rightarrow C_{18} (\mathbf{X}^0) = 0.08839 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{19} (\mathbf{X}^0) = -0.03549 ) ( C_{20} (\mathbf{X}^0) = -0.02495 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \rightarrow C_{21} (\mathbf{X}^0) = 0.06468 ) ( \rightarrow C_{22} (\mathbf{X}^0) = 0.04873 )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\( \rightarrow \) constraint violation \( \rightarrow \) constraint violation
Variation of actuator leg lengths along the bigger parabolic tool path:

![Graph of Initial Design](6(a))

![Graph of Optimum Design](6(b))

Variation of actuator forces along the bigger parabolic tool path:

![Graph of Initial Design](6(c))

![Graph of Optimum Design](6(d))

Table 5.11: Comparison between the initial and optimum designs for the bigger parabolic tool path.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Design</th>
<th>Actuator Force</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initial</td>
<td>$F(X^0) = 23.121 \text{ N}$ Actuator leg 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optimum</td>
<td>$F(X') = 57.681 \text{ N}$ Actuator leg 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The infeasibility of the initial design $X^0$ is evident from figure inset 6(a), as well as from the violated inequality constraints corresponding to $C_7,$ $C_{10},$ $C_{11},$ $C_{14},$ $C_{15},$ $C_{16},$ $C_{17},$ $C_{18},$ $C_{21}$ and $C_{22}.$ Figure inset 6(c) shows the variation in actuator forces for this initial design with an objective function value of $F(X^0) = 23.121 \text{ N},$ with actuator leg 2 responsible for the maximum magnitude actuator force.
Considering the compromised optimum design $X^*$, the constraints corresponding to $C_2$, $C_4$, $C_6$, $C_7$, $C_8$, $C_9$, $C_{10}$ and $C_{11}$ are violated by the LFOPC-algorithm in its search for a best compromised solution. The variation of the actuator legs for this compromised optimum solution is shown in figure inset 6(b), where the violation of the maximum allowable actuator leg length by actuator legs $\ell_1$ and $\ell_3$ is clearly visible. In correspondence with Section 5.4.2, the magnitude of constraint function value $C_4(X^*) = 0.591 \times 10^{-3}$ m (0.591 mm) is indeed negligibly small, and from a practical point of view, the inequality constraint associated with $C_4$ can be considered active rather than violated (see expression (D.11)).

The violated inequality constraints associated with $C_2$, $C_4$ and $C_6$ (expression (D.10)) imply that the linearly adjustable revolute joints are positioned outside their allowable ranges. In particular, $C_2$ has the largest constraint function magnitude of the three with $C_2(X^*) = 0.00357$ m = 3.57 mm. Although substantial, these violations are not critical, since they lie within the minimum safety margin of 5 mm that was used during the formulation of the inequality constraints (see Appendix D).

Apart from the critically violated actuator leg length inequality constraints $C_7$ and $C_9$ (expression (D.11)), violated constraints $C_{10}$ and $C_{11}$ resulting from the tangential orientation of the moving platform, cannot be ignored. More specifically, of these four inequality constraint functions, the smallest magnitude is $C_{10}(X^*) = C_{11}(X^*) = 0.0121$ m (12.1 mm) and the largest magnitude is $C_4(X^*) = 0.0135$ m (13.5 mm).

The above analysis of the violated inequality constraints is used in the next subsection where the prescribed parabolic tool path is rationally divided into different segments. For the sake of completeness, however, the convergence histories of the objective function (Figure 5.32) and design variables (Figure 5.33) in arriving at the compromised solution, are also included here.
Figure 5.32: Convergence history of the objective function for the bigger parabolic tool path.

Figure 5.33: Convergence histories of design variables $X_i$, $i=1,2,...,5$ for the bigger parabolic tool path.

Note that the compromised optimum solution $X^*$ is found in 238 optimization iterations requiring 7 minutes and 29 seconds computational time on a Pentium IV 1.5 GHz computer with 640 MB DDRAM. The LFOPC-algorithm here also terminated on criterion 2 ($\varepsilon_s \leq 10^{-4}$) listed in Section 4.4.
5.7.2 Dividing the prescribed path into segments

5.7.2.1 Nodal points and orientation angle

In the case of a compromised solution the user may intervene in a rational manner in order to execute the path. This is done by firstly analyzing the constraints violated by the compromised design. Note that for the example under consideration, the critically violated inequality constraints are the maximum allowable actuator leg lengths \( \ell_1 \) and \( \ell_3 \) (\( C_7 \) and \( C_9 \) given by expression (D.11)) and the lower frame boundary constraints \( C_{10} \) and \( C_{11} \) as explained in Section D.3.3.2. This implies that the “vertical motion” of the moving platform that is required for the complete continuous tracing of the prescribed parabolic tool path shown in Figure 5.30, cannot be accommodated.

![Diagram](image_url)

**Figure 5.34:** Three sets of nodal points used to approximate the bigger parabolic tool path: (a) upper middle segment, (b) bottom left segment and (c) bottom right segment.

The prescribed parabolic tool path is symmetric about the y-axis, hence the “bounds of vertical motion”, associated with the execution of the left-hand side of the tool path correspond exactly to the “bounds of vertical motion” associated with the execution of the right-hand side of the tool path. This implies that
dividing the prescribed parabolic tool path into two symmetric segments, will not remedy the problem. An alternative strategy is to divide the prescribed tool path into three separate segments as shown in Figure 5.34 (a) – (c).

The sequential execution of firstly segment (b), then segment (a) and finally segment (c), is one possible strategy that can be followed to execute the prescribed bigger parabolic tool path. The assumption is made here that the workpiece can be repositioned after each segment is executed. This assumption is justified not only because repositioning is common practice in the machining of larger workpieces, but also because the two “repositioning parameters” correspond to chosen design variables of the constrained optimization problem. In particular, design variables $X_3$ and $X_4$ determine the position of the workpiece relative to the base of the planar Gough-Stewart machining platform (see Figure 5.5).

For demonstration purposes it is further assumed that the planar “workpiece” on which the prescribed tool path is to be traced, can be rotated through 180° about the vertical y-axis of the prescribed parabola. This assumption implies that a second possible strategy for the execution of the prescribed bigger parabolic tool path, is to sequentially trace segments (b) and (a) of Figure 5.34, then rotate the workpiece through 180° about its vertical symmetry axis, and finally trace segment (b) of Figure 5.34 once more.

The advantage of the latter strategy is that for the optimization based operating system of the planar Gough-Stewart platform as proposed in this study, only two of the three segments shown in Figure 5.34 have to be optimized for. In practice segments (b) and (a) are treated as two separate tool paths, each requiring its own optimization run. The subsequent optimization results of the respective prescribed tool paths are presented in sub-sections 5.7.2.2 and 5.7.2.3.

For both prescribed tool paths, the OCAS trajectory-planning methodology (Chapter 3) is applied with the maximum allowable acceleration limited to 0.01 meter per second square ($\ddot{s}_{\text{allow}} = 0.01 \text{ m/s}^2$), and a specified cutting speed of 1.0 m/min ($v' = 1.0 \text{ m/min}$). With these specifications, the simulated prescribed motion along segment (b) in Figure 5.34 is completed in 10.07 s, and the simulated prescribed motion along segment (a) in Figure 5.34 is completed in 24.16 s.

The original specification that the moving platform of the test-model be tangentially orientated with respect to the prescribed curve, is also incorporated here. In particular, the moving platform orientation angle now varies from 63.4° at the starting point ($-0.2, 0.2$) of segment (b) to 54.5° at the end point ($-0.14, -0.098$) of segment (b) as shown in Figure 5.35.
Figure 5.35: Variation in the orientation angle for segment (b) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34).

For segment (a) in Figure 5.34, the moving platform orientation angle varies from 54.5° at the start point (-0.14, -0.098), to -54.5° at the end point (0.14, -0.098) (see Figure 5.36).

Figure 5.36: Variation in the orientation angle for segment (a) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34).
5.7.2.2 Optimization results for segment (b) of Figure 5.34.

A comparison between the initial test-model design and the optimum test-model design for segment (b) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34) is given in Table 5.12 with figure insets 7(a) – 7(d).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial design</th>
<th>Optimum compromised design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( x^0 = [0.4, 0.4, -0.4, -0.4, 0.2]^T )</td>
<td>( x^* = [0.21606, 0.23581, -0.52924, -0.38758, 0.11917]^T )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inequality constraint values (see Section D.3):</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_1(x^0) = -0.05 )</td>
<td>( C_1(x^*) = -0.23394 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_2(x^0) = -0.3 )</td>
<td>( C_2(x^*) = -0.11606 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_3(x^0) = -0.065 )</td>
<td>( C_3(x^*) = -0.22919 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_4(x^0) = -0.07 )</td>
<td>( C_4(x^*) = -0.12281 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_5(x^0) = -0.32486 )</td>
<td>( C_5(x^*) = -0.15083 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_6(x^0) = -0.23336 )</td>
<td>( C_6(x^*) = -0.00617 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_7(x^0) = -0.00911 )</td>
<td>( C_7(x^*) = -0.13510 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_8(x^0) = -0.12770 )</td>
<td>( C_8(x^*) = -0.17790 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_9(x^0) = -0.38212 )</td>
<td>( C_9(x^*) = -0.00394 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{10}(x^0) = -0.29556 )</td>
<td>( C_{10}(x^*) = -0.00154 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{11}(x^0) = -0.40876 )</td>
<td>( C_{11}(x^*) = -0.51136 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{12}(x^0) = -0.02801 )</td>
<td>( C_{12}(x^*) = -0.48845 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{13}(x^0) = -0.303048 )</td>
<td>( C_{13}(x^*) = -0.31045 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{14}(x^0) = 0.04160 )</td>
<td>( C_{14}(x^*) = -0.06274 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{15}(x^0) = 0.05455 )</td>
<td>( C_{15}(x^*) = -0.22601 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{16}(x^0) = 0.08339 )</td>
<td>( C_{16}(x^*) = -0.07416 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{17}(x^0) = -0.04946 )</td>
<td>( C_{17}(x^*) = -0.03509 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{18}(x^0) = -0.06903 )</td>
<td>( C_{18}(x^*) = -0.05569 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{19}(x^0) = -0.05174 )</td>
<td>( C_{19}(x^*) = -0.08209 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{20}(x^0) = 0.04874 )</td>
<td>( C_{20}(x^*) = -0.18538 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \rightarrow ) constraint violation</td>
<td>( \rightarrow ) constraint violation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Variation of actuator leg lengths along segment (b) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34):

![Initial design](7(a))

![Optimum design](7(b))
Variation of actuator forces along segment (b) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial design</th>
<th>Optimum design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Graph" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Graph" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[ F(X^0) = 23.078 \text{ N} \quad \text{Actuator leg 2} \]

\[ F(X^*) = 17.238 \text{ N} \quad \text{Actuator leg 3} \]

Table 5.12: Comparison between the initial and optimum designs for segment (b) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34).

The initial design \( X^0 \) is infeasible as can be seen from the positive inequality constraint function values \( C_{15}(X^0) \), \( C_{14}(X^0) \), \( C_{15}(X^0) \), \( C_{16}(X^0) \), \( C_{17}(X^0) \) and \( C_{18}(X^0) \) in Table 5.12. The (allowable) initial variation of the actuator leg lengths along segment (b) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34) is shown in figure inset 7(a).

The LFOPC-optimization algorithm finds the feasible optimum design \( X^* \) in 122 optimization iterations requiring 1 minute and 32 seconds computational time on a Pentium IV 1.5 GHz computer with 640 MB DDRAM.

The optimum design \( X^* \) found is an unconstrained optimum as can be seen from the negative inequality constraint function values \( C_i(X^*) \), \( i = 1,2,3,...,22 \) listed in Table 5.12, and the optimum variation of the actuator leg lengths shown in figure inset 7(b). The optimum variation of the actuator forces along segment (b) of the bigger parabolic tool path shown in figure inset 7(d) is significantly different when compared to the initial variation shown in figure inset 7(c). In particular, the initial objective function value is \( F(X^0) = 23.078 \text{ N} \) in actuator leg \( \ell_2 \), while the optimum objective function value is \( F(X^*) = 17.238 \text{ N} \) in actuator leg \( \ell_3 \).
The convergence histories of the objective function (Figure 5.37) and design variables (Figure 5.38) are shown below. Note that since no active constraints were identified as the LFOPC-algorithm progressed along phase 0 (see Appendix C), the iterative search terminated on criterion 2 \( (\varepsilon_c \leq 10^{-5}) \) listed in Section 4.4 before the end of phase 0.

**Figure 5.37:** Convergence history of the objective function for segment (b) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34).

**Figure 5.38:** Convergence histories of design variables \( X_i, \ i = 1,2,...,5 \) for segment (b) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34).
5.7.2.3 Optimization results for segment (a) of Figure 5.34.

A comparison between the initial test-model design and the optimum test-model design for segment (a) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34) is given in Table 5.13 with figure insets 8(a) – 8(d).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial design</th>
<th>Optimum compromised design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$X^o = [0.4, 0.4, -0.4, -0.4, 0.2]^T$</td>
<td>$X^* = [0.28698, 0.27183, -0.40319, -0.25524, 0.13241]^T$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inequality constraint values (see Section D.3):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$C_1(X^o) = -0.05$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_2(X^o) = -0.065$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_3(X^o) = -0.07$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_4(X^o) = -0.087$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\rightarrow C_5(X^o) = 0.10390$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_6(X^o) = 0.00321$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_7(X^o) = -0.12872$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_8(X^o) = -0.05491$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_9(X^o) = -0.00651$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_{10}(X^o) = 0.00321$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_{11}(X^o) = 0.00321$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_{12}(X^o) = -0.06549$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_{13}(X^o) = -0.12872$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_{14}(X^o) = -0.03807$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_{15}(X^o) = -0.05491$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_{16}(X^o) = -0.00827$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_{17}(X^o) = -0.01806$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_{18}(X^o) = -0.00218$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_{19}(X^o) = -0.07006$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_{20}(X^o) = -0.09382$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_{21}(X^o) = -0.08689$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_{22}(X^o) = -0.01093$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Variation of actuator leg lengths along segment (a) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34):
Variation of actuator forces along segment (a) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34):

**Table 5.13: Comparison between the initial and optimum designs for segment (a) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34).**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Segment (a)</th>
<th>Initial design</th>
<th>Optimum design</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Actuator leg 1</td>
<td>$F(\mathbf{X}^0) = 19.554 \text{ N}$</td>
<td>$F(\mathbf{X}^*) = 24.347 \text{ N}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To start off with, the initial design $\mathbf{X}^0$ is again infeasible as can be seen from the positive inequality constraint function values $C_7(\mathbf{X}^0)$, $C_{10}(\mathbf{X}^0)$ and $C_{11}(\mathbf{X}^0)$ in Table 5.13. Figure inset 8(a) also shows that actuator leg $\ell_i$ violates the maximum allowable actuator leg length (inequality constraint $C_r$) as segment (a) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34) is traced with the initial design. The lower frame boundary inequality constraints $C_{10}$ and $C_{11}$ (expression (D.12)) are also slightly violated by the initial design.

For the feasible optimum design $\mathbf{X}^*$, the active inequality constraints corresponding to $C_7$, $C_{10}$, $C_{11}$ and $C_{18}$ (see Table 5.13) exhibit a behavior similar to that detected for the circular tool path of Section 5.4, and explained in detail with reference to Table 5.6. The LFOPC-optimization terminated on criterion 2 ($\epsilon_r \leq 10^{-5}$) listed in Section 4.4 after 144 optimization iterations requiring 3 minutes and 40 seconds computational time on a Pentium IV 1.5 GHz computer with 640 MB DDRAM.

The optimum variation of the actuator forces along segment (a) of the bigger parabolic tool path shown in figure inset 8(d) is fairly similar to the initial variation shown in figure inset 8(c). In particular, the
initial objective function value is $F(X^0) = 19.554 \text{ N}$ in actuator leg $\ell_1$, while the optimum objective function value is $F(X') = 24.347 \text{ N}$, also in actuator leg $\ell_1$.

The convergence histories of the objective function (Figure 5.39) and design variables (Figure 5.40) are shown below. Note that both these graphs indicate that in this case, effective convergence is only reached after only 120 iterations.

![Objective function value](image)

**Figure 5.39:** Convergence history of the objective function for segment (a) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34).

![Design variables](image)

**Figure 5.40:** Convergence histories of design variables $X_i$, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, 5$ for segment (a) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34).
5.7.3 Execution of the prescribed bigger parabolic tool path

5.7.3.1 First execution of segment (b) (see Figure 5.34)

The series of photographs grouped in Figure 5.41 shows the initial and final time instants during the first ("upward") execution of segment (b) of the prescribed bigger parabolic curve (see Figure 5.34). The tangential orientation of the moving platform is clearly visible from these photographs.

Figure 5.41: First execution of segment (b) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34).

A close-up view of the executed segment (including a horizontal reference base-line) is shown in Figure 5.42.

Figure 5.42: Close-up view of the executed segment (b) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34).
5.7.3.2 Execution of segment (a) (see Figure 5.34)

Once segment (b) has been traced, the “workpiece” is repositioned as explained in Section 5.7.2.1. The series of photographs grouped in Figure 5.43 shows the positioning of the platform at different time instants during the execution of segment (a) of the prescribed bigger parabolic curve (see Figure 5.34). These photographs clearly show that the tangential orientation of the moving platform is maintained as segment (a) is traced.

![Figure 5.43: Execution of segment (a) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34).](image)

The close-up view of the executed segments (b) and (a) shown in Figure 5.44, emphasizes the smooth transition between consecutive segments.
Figure 5.44: Close-up view of the executed segments (b) and (a) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34).

5.7.3.3 Second execution of segment (b) (see Figure 5.34)

Corresponding to the second possible strategy for the piece-wise execution of the prescribed bigger parabolic tool path (see Section 5.7.2.1), the planar “workpiece” is now rotated through $180^\circ$ about its vertical symmetry-axis, and repositioned so that segment (b) of Figure 5.34 can be traced for the second time, also “upwards”.

The series of photographs grouped in Figure 5.45 shows the initial and final time instants, as well as an intermediate time instant during the second execution of segment (b) (see Figure 5.34). The tangential orientation of the moving platform is again clearly visible from these photographs.
Figure 5.45: Second execution of segment (b) of the bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.34).

A close-up view of the completely executed bigger parabolic tool path is shown in Figure 5.42. In spite of the piece-wise execution of this tool path, it is proportionally shaped and smooth, in agreement with the continuous prescribed tool path specified by Figure 5.30.

Figure 5.46: Close-up view of the completely executed bigger parabolic tool path (see Figure 5.30).
6 CONCLUSION

In the optimization procedure developed in this study for the optimum operation of a re-configurable machining platform, the evaluation of the objective and constraint functions was done through the computer simulation of the dynamics of the device. For the actual optimization the simulation was coupled to a relatively novel and particularly robust optimization method (LFOPC). The resulting methodology was successful in yielding operational geometries for the re-configurable platform which are not only feasible in accommodating various specified trajectories, but also optimal with respect to the actuator forces required to produce the associated prescribed kinematics.

The validity of the operational designs obtained via theoretical modeling, computer simulation and numerical optimization, was also physically verified through the execution of the non-trivial paths using an actual physically re-configurable device, designed and constructed for the purposes of the current study. The successful execution of the paths demonstrates the practical potential of the device since the paths represent complicated, and free-form planar machining tasks.

In the light of the above, it is clear that the main objective of this study, namely the verification of the feasibility, both from a theoretical and practical point of view, of a novel proposed concept of a re-configurable planar Gough-Stewart machining platform, has been achieved. The remainder of this chapter takes on the form of a detailed review and assessment of the accomplishments of this study.

6.1 Computer simulation

A special purpose computer program was developed in Chapter 2, that models the kinematics and the associated dynamical behavior of a planar Gough-Stewart platform. Coupled to this program, the trajectory-planning algorithm developed in Chapter 3, allows for the realistic simulation of the continuous motion of the platform.
6.1.1 Kinematic and kinetic modeling

The above mentioned special purpose program, with which the kinematic and kinetic modeling of a planar Gough-Stewart platform may be done, was developed using the Newton-Euler approach as presented by Haug [66] and Nikravesh [65].

This dedicated program yields closed-form solutions for the inverse kinematics (positions, velocities and accelerations) of the seven moving bodies comprising the mechanism. With the positions, velocities and accelerations known, the special purpose program also provides closed-form solutions for the inverse dynamics of the mechanism. Here, the weight and inertia of each moving body, as well as the single external force acting on the mechanism, are taken into consideration to determine in the required input actuator forces.

The single external force referred to is the cutting force resulting from the contact between the cutting tool and the workpiece during material removal. Here the program was successfully adapted to simulate either of two possible machining scenarios, i.e. either with the workpiece or the cutting tool externally fixed.

6.1.2 OCAS trajectory-planning algorithm

Although the OCAS trajectory-planning algorithm was specifically developed for implementation in conjunction with the above mentioned simulation program, its application is not limited to the planar Gough-Stewart platform under consideration. In fact, since all three planar DOF are catered for, the motion of the end-effector of any other planar mechanism can similarly be described.

The results presented in Section 3.5 show that planar motion along test paths described by analytical non-linear functions may realistically be simulated, without compromising on the positional or orientational accuracy. Note that slight positional and orientational inaccuracies are inevitable since the approximating cubic splines are fitted in the time domain, while the nodal points, representing the prescribed path, are specified in the two-dimensional Cartesian domain. For all practical purposes, these discrepancies are negligible.

Apart from specifying the kinematics along test paths described by analytical non-linear functions, the OCAS-algorithm was also successfully used for trajectory-planning along a non-analytical test curve. The treble clef test curve was generated using a Non-Uniform Rational B-Spline (NURBS) with commercial Computer Aided Design (CAD) software. Here it was shown that an adequately refined set of nodal points along this curve is required to ensure sufficient accuracy for the kinematics. For the example, while the NURBS test curve was generated with 42 nodal points, the OCAS-algorithm requires
CONCLUSION

49 nodal points on this curve for a representation accurate enough to generate the associated kinematic description.

For all test curves considered, continuous position, velocity and acceleration curves as well as the continuous orientation angle, orientation angular velocity and orientation angular acceleration curves are generated using the OCAS trajectory-planning algorithm. These continuous curves representing the kinematics, are essential input data to the simulation program modeling the kinematics of the planar Gough-Stewart platform. As a result of the continuous acceleration curves, the determined input actuator forces required for manipulating the moving platform along a prescribed path, are also continuous.

Although the application of the OCAS trajectory-planning algorithm was limited here to computer simulation of planar motion, the increased research interest in bridging the gap between free-form design and actual machining, requires further investigation of its applicability to actual physical control. Since a planar Gough-Stewart machining platform is ideally suited to execute non-linear paths, it can theoretically be applied as a machining device for free-form trajectories. The real-time control of such an actual planar Gough-Stewart machining platform could be done by the OCAS-algorithm implemented as part of an open architecture controller.

It should be added that, in principle, the OCAS trajectory-planning algorithm can also be extended to general three-dimensional motion-planning.

6.2 Formulation of the constrained design optimization problem

This study shows that an optimum relative positioning for a prescribed trajectory, as well as the associated planar Gough-Stewart platform geometry may be determined by the careful formulation and solution of an appropriate constrained optimization problem.

In particular, the single criterion cost-function introduced here is the minimization of the overall maximum magnitude actuator force, as the prescribed trajectory is traced. It is evident from the results presented in Chapter 5 that the use of this objective function successfully prevents the mechanism from encountering singular or near singular configurations with associated infinitely large actuator forces. The success of this approach is borne out by the moderate optimum objective function values, F(X*), obtained for all the prescribed trajectories.
In conjunction with the formulated objective function, non-trivial *inequality constraint functions* allow for the incorporation of additional design requirements. Hence, apart from the limitations imposed on the values of the design variables, inequality constraint functions are successfully used to limit the actuator leg lengths to within their allowable ranges. Furthermore, the complicated issue of prohibiting mechanical interference of the physical machine while in motion, is also achieved by means of inequality constraint functions. The effective formulation of the latter inequality constraints was made possible by the availability of closed-form solutions for the instantaneous positions of the individual bodies comprising the machining platform (see Section 6.1.1).

A sound foundation having been laid for the trajectory-based constrained optimization problem considered in this study, and a logical next step, to be pursued in the near future, is to optimize the adjustable geometry and placement of a planar Gough-Stewart platform for different prescribed workspace requirements.

### 6.3 The LFOPC-algorithm

The study also served to reinforce confidence in the LFOPC optimization algorithm as a method to solve optimization problems of practical engineering importance.

The optimization results have confirmed the LFOPC-algorithm's reputation as a robust method, capable of yielding accurate and reliable results despite the presence of numerical noise, the use of finite difference approximations, and discontinuities in the objective and constraint functions. In particular, the discontinuities in the slope of the objective function, that occurred in this study due to switching of the maximum actuator force between the legs, presented no problem and reliable results were obtained with reasonable computational economy. The respective prescribed trajectories investigated in this study required an average of approximately 6 minutes computational time on a Pentium IV 1.5 GHz computer with 640 MB DDRAM before the LFOPC-algorithm converged to the respective optimum operational geometries. In each case, the optimum solution corresponded to the specification of very accurate convergence tolerances. The algorithm was successful in each application, handling the five variables and up to 22 physical constraints with ease, even when starting from a severely infeasible initial design.

Since a standard initial design $X^0$ was used for all the prescribed tool paths investigated, it cannot be stated with certainty that the determined *local* optimum design is indeed the *global optimum* for all cases. Although the determination of the *global optimum* may be important from a theoretical point of view, the fact that the proposed methodology provides local optimum solutions that are indeed feasibly
CONCLUSION

executable, and correspond to acceptably low objective function values, is considered the most important contribution of this study.

The “analysis of convergence to the optimum” performed for the first five prescribed tasks was important, because it shed light on the functioning of the algorithm when applied to the class of design optimization problems considered in this study. Of particular importance was the finding that sufficiently accurate “engineering solutions” may be obtained by only applying phase 0 of the LFOPC algorithm. Considering the prescribed tasks investigated here, the percentage computational time that can be saved by using only phase 0, varies between 0% and 62% with an average of 30%. Indeed, termination of the LFOPC-algorithm after phase 0, will produce a practically feasible and near optimum design.

The robustness and effectiveness with which the LFOPC-optimization algorithm handles the formulated constrained optimization problem is best illustrated by the case of the “bigger parabolic tool path”, investigated in Section 5.7. Here the prescribed tool path cannot be continuously traced because of the physical limitations of the planar test-model. As a result, the LFOPC-algorithm yields a best compromised design. The compromised design, although infeasible, is invaluable in pointing out which inequality constraints are violated, and to what extent. It was shown for the “bigger parabolic tool path” that by analyzing the relevant information provided by the compromised solution, a rational piece-wise execution strategy can be determined for the successful and optimal execution of the complete path.

Consideration of the above mentioned factors, as well as previous successful experience in the LFOPC-algorithm [64], motivated its usage in solving the currently formulated constrained optimization problems. No other optimization algorithms were tested or applied in this study.

6.4 The adjustable geometry planar Gough-Stewart platform test-model

The adjustable capability required for the proposed concept was successfully implemented in the design of the test-model. The test-model’s demonstration capability is however limited to tracing different prescribed tool paths on an externally fixed workpiece. This machining option is considered more likely to be used in practice, since the alternative option of mounting the workpiece to the moving platform is limited by the size and weight of the workpiece that can realistically be mounted on the moving platform.
The prescribed trajectories were successfully traced simply by controlling the required variation of the actuator leg lengths. These lengths are found by solving the three closed-form inverse kinematic equations relating the position and orientation of the moving platform to the actuator leg lengths. The position and orientation of the moving platform follows directly from the prescribed trajectory, and hence the required actuator leg lengths may easily be determined.

To further extend the practical application of the proposed planar Gough-Stewart machining platform, its (open architecture) control software will have to be adapted to enable the direct manipulation of the three DOF of the moving platform. Such a capability would however require knowledge of the maximum possible workspace. This raises the possibility of incorporating the ranges of configurability as design variables in an extended optimization methodology. Hence, the foreseen extended optimization system, in which the geometry of the workspace may be prescribed, should eventually also include the maximum ranges of re-configurability capabilities of the mechanism as possible additional design variables.

Even though the test-model was not calibrated, visual inspection shows that the actual executed paths closely resemble the prescribed trajectories. The positional error of the moving platform is evidently very small compared to the overall size of the respective paths. This shows that a practical adjustable machine tool, corresponding to the design proposed and demonstrated in this study, may confidently be applied to the execution of machining trajectories intended for the rough material removal in the manufacturing of moulds.

In order to eventually fully exploit the inherent accuracy characteristics of the Gough-Stewart platform type machine tool, a calibration strategy remains to be developed, especially if the manipulator is frequently to be re-configured in order to accommodate differently specified trajectories.
A Derivation of the Planar Equations of Motion

A.1 Newton's second law

Kinetics is the study of motion and its relationship with the forces that produce the motion (see [65]). The simplest body arising in the study of motion is a particle, or point mass, defined by Nikravesh [65] as a mass concentrated at a point. According to Newton's second law, a particle will accelerate when it is subjected to unbalanced forces. More specifically, Newton's second law as applied to a particle is

\[ \vec{f} = m^{(p)} \vec{a} \]  \hspace{1cm} (A.1)

where \( \vec{f} \), \( m^{(p)} \) and \( \vec{a} \) respectively represents the total force acting on the particle, the mass of the particle and the acceleration of the particle (see Figure A.1).

![Figure A.1: A particle moving in a global coordinate system (after [65]).](image)

Since \( \vec{f} \) and \( \vec{a} \) are three-dimensional physical vectors, they may be represented as three-vectors in the global fixed coordinate system, i.e. \( \vec{f} = [f(x), f(y), f(z)]^T \) and \( \vec{a} = [a(x), a(y), a(z)]^T \). The position vector \( \vec{r} \) shown in Figure A.1 locates the particle in the global coordinate system and is represented in the global reference frame by \( \vec{r} = [x, y, z]^T \). The acceleration \( \vec{a} \) of the particle is the second time
derivative of the position vector, i.e. \( \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a} = [\dot{x}, \dot{y}, \dot{z}]^T \), and the global representation of expression (A.1) therefore is

\[
\mathbf{f} = m^{(p)} \mathbf{r}
\]  

(A.2)

For a system of \( p \) particles, the application of expression (A.2) may be extended to describe the motion of each particle \( i, i = 1, 2, \ldots, p \) in the system, i.e.

\[
m^{(p)}_i \ddot{\mathbf{r}}_i = \mathbf{f}_i + \sum_{j=1}^{p} \mathbf{f}_{ij} , \; i = 1, 2, \ldots, p
\]  

(A.3)

where \( \mathbf{f}_i \) is the global representation of the total externally applied force \( \mathbf{f}_i \) acting on particle \( i \), and \( \mathbf{f}_{ij} \) is the global representation of the internal force \( \mathbf{f}_{ij} \) extended by particle \( j \) on particle \( i \). Note that \( \mathbf{f}_{ii} = \mathbf{0} \).

Summing expression (A.3) over all \( p \) particles in the system results in

\[
\sum_{i=1}^{p} m^{(p)}_i \ddot{\mathbf{r}}_i = \sum_{i=1}^{p} \mathbf{f}_i + \sum_{i=1}^{p} \sum_{j=1}^{p} \mathbf{f}_{ij}
\]  

(A.4)

and since \( \mathbf{f}_{ij} = -\mathbf{f}_{ji} \) (Newton’s third law), it follows that \( \sum_{i=1}^{p} \sum_{j=1}^{p} \mathbf{f}_{ij} = \mathbf{0} \), and consequently expression (A.4) reduces to

\[
\sum_{i=1}^{p} m^{(p)}_i \ddot{\mathbf{r}}_i = \sum_{i=1}^{p} \mathbf{f}_i
\]  

(A.5)

or simply

\[
m \ddot{\mathbf{r}} = \mathbf{f}
\]  

(A.6)

where \( m = \sum_{i=1}^{p} m^{(p)}_i \) is the total mass of the system of particles,

\[
\mathbf{r} = \frac{1}{m} \sum_{i=1}^{p} m^{(p)}_i \mathbf{r}_i
\]

is the center of mass of the system of particles, and

\[
\mathbf{f} = \sum_{i=1}^{p} \mathbf{f}_i
\]

is the total external force acting on the system of particles.

The translational equation of motion of a system of particles (A.6), also holds for a general continuous rigid body or continuum, the center of mass of which is given by

\[
\mathbf{r} = \frac{1}{m} \int_{\text{vol}} \mathbf{r} \, dm
\]  

(A.7)

where \( \mathbf{r} \) locates an infinitesimally small mass element dm as shown in Figure A.2.
Since vector \( \mathbf{r}^P \) is the sum of two vectors \( \mathbf{r}^P = \mathbf{r} + \mathbf{s} \), it follows that
\[
\mathbf{r} = \frac{1}{m_{vol}} \int \mathbf{r}^P \, dm = \frac{1}{m_{vol}} \int (\mathbf{r} + \mathbf{s}) \, dm = \mathbf{r} + \frac{1}{m_{vol}} \int \mathbf{s} \, dm
\]
which implies that
\[
\int \mathbf{s} \, dm = \mathbf{0} \quad (A.8)
\]
and taking first and second order time derivatives gives
\[
\int \mathbf{s} \, dm = \mathbf{0} \quad (A.9)
\]
and
\[
\int \mathbf{s} \, dm = \mathbf{0} \quad (A.10)
\]

### A.2 Planar equations of motion

For the purposes of analyzing a planar machining center it is required to derive the planar equations of motion. Consider Figure A.3 showing an external force \( \mathbf{f}_i \) acting on the \( i \)-th particle of a system. For planar motion, the center of mass \( C \) of the system remains in the \( G_{xy} \)-plane, and coincides with the origin \( 0 \) of the body-fixed \( \xi \eta \zeta \)-coordinate system. The centroidal body-fixed \( \xi \eta \zeta \)-coordinate system is chosen in such a way that the \( \zeta \)-axis is parallel to the \( z \)-axis. Note that the origin of the global \( xyz \)-reference frame is denoted by \( G \).
A.2.1 Planar translational equations of motion

The first necessary condition for the system in Figure A.3 to experience planar motion in the Gxy-plane, is that the external force $\vec{f}_e$ must be parallel to the xy-plane of motion, which is only possible if the z-component $f_z(z)$ of the force $\vec{f}_e$ is zero (see [65]).

More specifically, expression (A.6) gives the two planar translational equations of motion, for the system shown in Figure A.3:

$$m\ddot{x} = f_{(x)} \quad (A.11)$$
$$m\ddot{y} = f_{(y)} \quad (A.12)$$

with of course $f_{(z)} = 0$.

Expressions (A.11) and (A.12) may also be combined in matrix form:

$$\begin{bmatrix} m & 0 \\ 0 & m \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \ddot{x} \\ \ddot{y} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} f_{(x)} \\ f_{(y)} \end{bmatrix} \quad (A.13)$$

with $m$ representing the total mass of the system, $\ddot{x}$ and $\ddot{y}$ respectively representing the x- and y-accelerations of the center of mass C, and $f_{(x)}$ and $f_{(y)}$ respectively representing the x- and y-components of the total external force acting on the mass system.
A.2.2 Planar rotational equations of motion

The second necessary condition for the system in Figure A.3 to experience planar motion, is that it is only to rotate about the \( \zeta \)-axis (see [65]). This rotation is due to the resultant moment about \( C \) of the external forces acting on the system. Since the \( \zeta \)-axis is parallel to the \( z \)-axis, the global representation of the resultant moment of the forces about \( C \) must, for planar motion, only have a \( z \)-component.

Consider the moment about \( G \) as a result of the external forces \( \bar{f}_i \) and \( \sum_{j=1}^{p} \bar{r}_j \) acting on particle \( i \) (see Figure A.3):

\[
\bar{n}_i^G = \bar{r}_i^p \times \left( \bar{f}_i + \sum_{j=1}^{p} \bar{r}_j \right)
\]  
(A.14)

With particle \( i \) located in the global reference frame by

\[
\bar{r}_i^p = \bar{r} + \bar{s}_i
\]  
(A.15)

the global representation of expression (A.15) is

\[
\bar{r}_i^p = \bar{r} + s_i
\]  
(A.16)

Hence, expression (A.14) may be represented in the global reference frame by

\[
\bar{n}_i^G = \bar{r}_i^p \left( \bar{f}_i + \sum_{j=1}^{p} \bar{r}_j \right)
\]  
(A.17)

with \( \bar{r}_i^p \) representing the expansion of \( \bar{r}_i^p \) into a skew symmetric matrix, i.e.:

\[
\bar{r}_i^p = \begin{bmatrix}
0 & -z^p & y^p \\
z^p & 0 & -x^p \\
-y^p & x^p & 0
\end{bmatrix}
\]  
(A.18)

Substituting expression (A.3) into (A.17) yields

\[
\bar{n}_i^G = \bar{r}_i^p \left( \bar{f}_i + \sum_{j=1}^{p} \bar{r}_j \right) = \bar{r}_i^p (m_i^p \bar{r}_i^p)
\]  
(A.19)

Summing expression (A.19) over all \( i = 1, 2, ..., p \), gives the sum of the moments with respect to \( G \) as

\[
\bar{n}^G = \sum_{i=1}^{p} \bar{r}_i^p \bar{f}_i + \sum_{i=1}^{p} \sum_{j=1}^{p} \bar{r}_i^p \bar{r}_j = \sum_{i=1}^{p} \bar{r}_i^p (m_i^p \bar{r}_i^p)
\]  
(A.20)

However, since \( \bar{r}_i^p f_j = -\bar{r}_j^p f_i \) (see expressions (A.4) and (A.5)), it follows that \( \sum_{i=1}^{p} \sum_{j=1}^{p} \bar{r}_i^p f_j = 0 \).

Furthermore, expression (A.16) implies that

\[
\bar{r}_i^p = \bar{r} + \bar{s}_i
\]  
(A.21)

Expression (A.20) may therefore be written as
DERIVATION OF THE PLANAR EQUATIONS OF MOTION

\[ \mathbf{n}^G = \mathbf{r} + \sum_{i=1}^{p} \mathbf{x}_i \mathbf{f}_i = \sum_{i=1}^{p} m_i^G \mathbf{r}_i \mathbf{f}_i \]  \hspace{1cm} (A.22)

where \( \sum_{i=1}^{p} \mathbf{x}_i = \mathbf{n} \) the sum of the moments of the external forces about \( C \).

For a continuous body, \( m_i^G \) represents an infinitesimally small mass element \( dm \), i.e. \( m_i^G = dm \), and therefore expression (A.22) becomes

\[ \mathbf{n}^G = \mathbf{r} + \mathbf{n} = \int_{\text{vol}} \mathbf{r} \mathbf{f} \mathbf{p} \mathbf{d}m \]  \hspace{1cm} (A.23)

with the position of the center of mass of the continuum \( r \) given by expression (A.7).

Since the center of mass of the body under consideration is to remain in the Gxy-plane, the z-component of \( r \) is identically equal to zero, i.e. \( r = [x, y, 0]^T \). The expansion of \( r \) into a skew-symmetric matrix is therefore

\[ \mathbf{r} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & y^p \\ 0 & 0 & -x^p \\ -y^p & x^p & 0 \end{bmatrix} \]  \hspace{1cm} (A.24)

The force, \( \mathbf{f} \) in expression (A.23) is the global representation of the resultant external force acting on the body, and \( \mathbf{n}^G \) and \( \mathbf{n} \) respectively represent the resultant moment of the external forces acting on the body about the origin of the global reference frame \( G \), and the center of mass of the body \( C \).

In satisfying the second necessary condition for planar motion, the expansion of expression (A.23) may only yield a single non-zero scalar equation corresponding to the z-component of the resultant moment acting on the body with respect to \( G \):

\[ n_{z}^G = x f_{y} - y f_{x} + n_{z} = \int_{\text{vol}} \mathbf{r} \mathbf{f} \mathbf{p} \mathbf{d}m \]  \hspace{1cm} (A.25)

From expression (A.16) it follows that for a continuous body

\[ \mathbf{r}^p = \mathbf{r} + \mathbf{s} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} s_{(x)} \\ s_{(y)} \\ s_{(z)} \end{bmatrix} \]  \hspace{1cm} (A.26)

with first and second time derivatives given by \( \dot{\mathbf{r}}^p = \dot{\mathbf{r}} + \dot{\mathbf{s}} = [\dot{x}, \dot{y}, \dot{z}]^T + [\dot{s}_{(x)}, \dot{s}_{(y)}, \dot{s}_{(z)}]^T \) and \( \ddot{\mathbf{r}}^p = \ddot{\mathbf{r}} + \ddot{\mathbf{s}} = [\ddot{x}, \ddot{y}, \ddot{z}]^T + [\ddot{s}_{(x)}, \ddot{s}_{(y)}, \ddot{s}_{(z)}]^T \) respectively.

Substituting expression (A.26) into the right hand side of expression (A.25) results in
\[ n(z) = x(f(y) - y(f(x)) \] 

From expressions (A.8) and (A.10) it follows that \( \int_{\text{vol}} s \cdot r \, dm = 0 \) and \( \int_{\text{vol}} r \cdot s \, dm = 0 \), and therefore expression (A.27) reduces to

\[ n(z) = x(m \dot{y}) - y(m \dot{x}) + \int_{\text{vol}} [s(x) \dot{s}(y) - s(y) \dot{s}(x)] \, dm \] (A.28)

From expressions (A.11) and (A.12) it also follows that \( x(f(y) - y(f(x)) = x(m \dot{y}) - y(m \dot{x}) \), and therefore (A.28) becomes

\[ n(z) = \int_{\text{vol}} [s(x) \dot{s}(y) - s(y) \dot{s}(x)] \, dm \] (A.29)

For general three-dimensional motion, the above argument would give

\[ n = \int_{\text{vol}} \bar{s} \cdot \dot{s} \, dm \] (A.30)

where \( \bar{s} \) represents a skew-symmetric matrix of the form

\[ \bar{s} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -s(z) & s(y) \\ s(z) & 0 & -s(x) \\ -s(y) & s(x) & 0 \end{bmatrix} \] (A.31)

Nikravesh [65] shows that

\[ \bar{s} \cdot \bar{s} = -\bar{s} \cdot \dot{s} \cdot \omega - \bar{\omega} \cdot \bar{s} \cdot \omega \] (A.32)

with \( \omega = [\omega_x, \omega_y, \omega_z]^T \) the global representation of the angular velocity vector.

In agreement with the second necessary condition for planar motion, the body shown in Figure A.3 that rotates only about the \( \zeta \)-axis, has an angular velocity vector of which only the \( z \)-component may be non-zero, i.e.:

\[ \omega = [0, 0, \omega_z]^T \] (A.33)

with \( \omega_z = \dot{\phi} \) (see Figure A.3).

Consequently, the skew-symmetric matrix \( \bar{\omega} \) in (A.32) is given by:

\[ \bar{\omega} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -\dot{\phi} & 0 \\ \dot{\phi} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \] (A.34)

The time derivative of expression (A.33) is

\[ \dot{\omega} = [0, 0, \dot{\omega}_z]^T \] (A.35)

with \( \dot{\omega}_z = \ddot{\phi} \).
Hence, by substituting expressions (A.33) - (A.35) into the right hand side of expression (A.32), and isolating the third component of the resultant vector, gives for planar motion:

\[ s_{(x)} \ddot{s}_{(y)} - s_{(y)} \ddot{s}_{(x)} = \dot{\phi}(s_{(x)}^2 + s_{(y)}^2) \]  

(A.36)

Since for planar motion, the \( \zeta \)-axis is parallel to the \( z \)-axis (see Figure A.3), it follows that:

\[ s_{(x)} \ddot{s}_{(y)} - s_{(y)} \ddot{s}_{(x)} = \dot{\phi}(s_{(x)}^2 + s_{(y)}^2) = \dot{\phi}(s_{(z)}^2 + s_{(\eta)}^2) \]  

(A.37)

Substituting expression (A.37) into expression (A.29) finally gives

\[ n_{(\zeta)} = \dot{\phi} \int_{\text{vol}} (s_{(z)}^2 + s_{(\eta)}^2) \, dm \]  

(A.38)

The integral in expression (A.38):

\[ j_{\zeta} = \int_{\text{vol}} (s_{(z)}^2 + s_{(\eta)}^2) \, dm \]  

(A.39)

is called the mass moment of inertia of the body about the \( \zeta \)-axis through \( C \).

Finally substituting expression (A.39) into expression (A.38) gives the planar rotational equation of motion:

\[ n_{(\zeta)} = \dot{\phi} j_{\zeta} \]  

(A.40)

Note that the global representation of the angular velocity vector \( \omega = [0,0,\dot{\phi}]^T \) is equal to the local representation of the angular velocity vector \( \omega' = [0,0,\dot{\phi}]^T \).
Appendix B

B Flowchart of the OCAS Trajectory-Planning Methodology
FLOWCHART OF THE OCAS TRAJECTORY-PLANNING METHODOLOGY

OCAS

User Inputs

Computer code outputs

Enter the nodal points \[ t_i = (x, y), i = 0, 1, \ldots, N \]

Determine the 4 unknown coefficients of each interpolating polynomial \( p(x) \) or \( p(y) \) for \( i = 1, 2, \ldots, N \) (see Section 3.1.1.1)

Are the initial and final gradient conditions met? (see Section 3.2)

Determine \( \frac{dy}{dx} \) or \( \frac{dx}{dy} \) at \( P_i \) and \( P_N \) using Taylor expansions (see Section 3.2)

Are the cubic arc conditions met? (see Section 3.1.1.1)

Determine the path length of each consecutive cubic arc \( s_i \) for \( i = 1, 2, \ldots, N \) using Simpson’s composite rule (see Section 3.1.1.2)

Enter the number of subintervals for Simpson’s composite rule (default \( n = 20 \))

Determine the total path length \( S \) (expression (3.25))

Specify the central tangential speed \( v' \) and maximum allowable tangential acceleration \( \dot{s}_{\text{allow}} \)

* Determine the dependence of the curve length on parameter \( t \) (see Sections 3.1.1.3 & 3.3)

Determine the corresponding nodal times \( t_i \), \( i = 1, 2, \ldots, N-1 \), using the Newton Raphson iterative method (see Sections 3.1.1.3 & 3.3)

Use fixed orientation? Yes

Specify fixed orientation angle \( \phi_{\text{fix}} \)

Determine approximates for \( X(0) \) or \( Y(0) \) and \( X(T_1) \) or \( Y(T_1) \) using Taylor expansions (see Section 3.1.2)

No

Specify the angular offset \( \phi_{\text{ext}} \)

Generate cubic spline representations for \( X(t) \) and \( Y(t) \)

Determine the approximate gradient angle at each nodal point, and consequently also the orientation angle \( \phi_i \) at each \( t_i \), \( i = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N \) (see Section 3.4)

Determine approximates for \( \phi(0) \) and \( \phi(T_1) \) using Taylor expansions (see Section 3.4)

Specify the number of additional intermediate time instants \( \eta_{\text{add}} \) (default \( \eta_{\text{add}} = 10 \))

Generate a cubic spline representation for \( \phi(t) \)

Subdivide the time span over each interval \( t_i - t_{i-1}, i = 1, 2, \ldots, N \) to obtain \( \eta_{\text{add}} \) additional intermediate time instants for plotting the results (see Section 3.5): \( Y \) vs \( X \), \( s(t), \phi(t), s(t) \), \( X(t), X(t) X(t), Y(t), Y(t), Y(t) \), \( \phi(t), \phi(t), \phi(t) \)

Figure B.1: OCAS flowchart.

* See detailed flowchart in Figure B.2

Appendix B 236
FLOWCHART OF THE OCAS TRAJECTORY-PLANNING METHODOLOGY

**Determine the dependence of the curve length on parameter t (see Sections 3.1.1.3 & 3.3)**

- Determine initial acceleration $a_0(0)$ (expression (3.25))

  - **Is central speed $v^*$ attained at nodal point $N_{MID}$ such that $a_0(0) \leq \dot{s}_{\text{ALLOW}}$?**
    - Yes: Set $i = 1$
    - No: Shift node $N_i$ to coincide with node $N_{MID}$

- Determine time instant $T_{MID}$ and the 4 unknown coefficients of the cubic polynomial function in time $s(t)$ specifying $s(T_{MID}) = v^*$ (see Section 3.1.1.3)

- Determine initial acceleration $a_0(0)$ (expression (3.25))

  - **Is central speed $v^*$ attained at nodal point $N_i$ such that $a_0(0) \leq \dot{s}_{\text{ALLOW}}$?**
    - Yes: Set $i = i + 1$
    - No: Shift node $N_i$ to coincide with node $N_{MID+1}$

  - Determine time instant $T_{MID}$ and the 4 unknown coefficients of the cubic polynomial function in time $s(t)$ specifying $s(T_{MID}) = v^*$ (see Section 3.1.1.3)

- Determine initial acceleration $a_0(0)$ (expression (3.25))

  - **Is central speed $v^*$ attained at nodal point $N_i$ such that $a_0(0) \leq \dot{s}_{\text{ALLOW}}$?**
    - Yes: Set $i = i + 1$
    - No: Shift node $N_i$ to coincide with node $N_{MID+1}$

  - Determine time instant $T_{MID}$ and the 4 unknown coefficients of the cubic polynomial function in time $s(t)$ specifying $s(T_{MID}) = v^*$ (see Section 3.1.1.3)

**Figure B.2: Detail flowchart of determining the dependence of the curve length on t.**

Appendix B
FLOWCHART OF THE OCAS TRAJECTORY-PLANNING METHODOLOGY

Appendix B

238
C requested content
or

\[ F(t) + T(t) = \text{constant \{conservation of energy\}} \]

Note that since \( \Delta F = -\Delta T \) as long as \( T \) increases \( F \) decreases. This forms the basis of the dynamic algorithm.

### C.3 LFOP: Basic algorithm for unconstrained problems

Given \( F(X) \) and a starting point \( X(0) = X^0 \)

- Compute the dynamic trajectory by solving the initial value problem (IVP)
  \[
  \begin{align*}
  \ddot{X}(t) &= -\nabla F(X(t)) \\
  X(0) &= 0, \quad X(0) = X^0 
  \end{align*}
  \tag{C.3}
  \]

- Monitor \( \dot{X}(t) = v(t) \). Clearly as long as \( T = \frac{1}{2} \|v(t)\|^2 \) increases \( F(X(t)) \) decreases and descent follows as required.
- When \( \|v(t)\| \) decreases apply some interfering strategy to extract energy and thereby increasing the likelihood of descent.
- In practice a numerical integration “leap-frog” scheme is used to integrate the IVP (C.3). Compute for \( k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \) and time step \( \Delta t \)
  \[
  \begin{align*}
  X^{k+1} &= X^k + v^k \Delta t \\
  v^{k+1} &= v^k + a^k \Delta t 
  \end{align*}
  \tag{C.4}
  \]
  where \( a^k = -\nabla F(X^k) \), \( v^0 = \frac{1}{2} a^0 \Delta t \)
- A typical interfering strategy is:
  If \( \|v^{k+1}\| \geq v^k \) continue
  else
  \[
  \begin{align*}
  v^k &= \frac{v^{k+1} + v^k}{4}, \\
  X^k &= \frac{x^{k+1} + x^k}{2}
  \end{align*}
  \tag{C.5}
  \]
  compute new \( v^{k+1} \) and continue.
- Further heuristics are used to determine an initial \( \Delta t \), to allow for magnification and reduction of \( \Delta t \), and to control the step size.
C.4 LFOPC: Modification for constrained problems

Constrained optimization problems are solved by the application, in three phases, of LFOP to a penalty function formulation of the problem [64, 76]. Given a function $F(X)$, $X \in \mathbb{R}^n$ with equality constraints $H_i(X) = 0 \ (i = 1, 2, \ldots, p < n)$ and inequality constraints $C_j(X) \leq 0 \ (j = 1, 2, \ldots, m)$ and penalty parameter $\mu >> 0$, the penalty function problem is to minimize

$$P(X, \mu) = F(X) + \sum_{i=1}^{p} \mu H_i^2(X) + \sum_{j=1}^{m} \beta_j C_j^2(X)$$

where $\beta_j = \begin{cases} 
0 & \text{if } G_j(X) \leq 0 \\
\mu & \text{if } G_j(X) > 0 
\end{cases}$

Phase 0: Given some $X^0$, then with the overall penalty parameter $\mu = \mu_0 (= 10^2)$ apply LFOP to $P(X, \mu_0)$ to give $X'(\mu_0)$

Phase 1: With $X^0 = X'(\mu_0)$, $\mu = \mu_1 (= 10^4)$ apply LFOP to $P(X, \mu_1)$ to give $X'(\mu_1)$ and identify active constraints $i_+ = 1, 2, \ldots, n_+; \ g_{i_+}(X'(\mu_1)) > 0$

Phase 2: With $X^0 = X'(\mu_1)$, use LFOP to minimize

$$P_e(X, \mu_1) = \sum_{i=1}^{p} \mu_i H_i^2(X) + \sum_{i_+}^{n_+} \mu_{i_+} g_{i_+}^2(X)$$

(C.7)

to give $X^*$.
Appendix D

D  PHYSICAL SPECIFICATION FOR SIMULATION AND OPERATIONAL CONSTRAINTS OF THE TEST-MODEL

D.1  Introduction

This Appendix describes the physical specifications required for simulation of the motion of the test-model. In addition it deals in detail with the incorporation of further physical constraints to prevent mechanical interference during the operation of the test-model.

D.2  Physical specifications for simulation of the test-model

A photograph of the test-model is shown in Figure D.1. Figure D.2 is a scaled two-dimensional view of the test-model where the eight bodies comprising the mechanical system are numbered in accordance with Figure 2.5.

Figure D.1: Photograph of the test-model
Figure D.2: Geometrical representation of the test-model as a mechanical system of eight bodies.

D.2.1 Operational geometry

Note that the same five design variables $X = [X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4, X_5]^T$, introduced in Section 4.2.1, are used here to describe the adjustable operational geometry of the physical test-model.
Design variable $X_1$ indicates the distance between revolute joints A and B on the moving platform. The center of mass of the moving platform is taken as midway between revolute joints A and B, hence

$$
\xi^A = \frac{-X_1}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \xi^B = \frac{X_1}{2}.
$$

Note that the absolute position of revolute joint D on the base twin tubular rails is fixed. Design variables $X_2$, $X_3$, and $X_4$ therefore determine the relative position of the global $0xy$-coordinate system, relative to the positionally fixed revolute joint D. More specifically, $x = 0$ is at $-|X_2| - X_4$ relative to revolute joint D, and $y = 0$ is at $-X_3$ relative to revolute joint D.

For the fixed workpiece case of Section 2.4.1 and 2.6.4.2.1, the prescribed tool path is specified in terms of the global $0xy$-coordinate system. Hence, a change in design variables $X_2$, $X_3$, and $X_4$ will shift the position of the prescribed tool path relative to revolute joint D.

The use of the test-model is currently limited to the execution of prescribed paths specified in the fixed workpiece. With an extension of the test-model capabilities, it would also be possible to demonstrate the machining operation for the fixed tool scenario as explained in Sections 2.4.2 and 2.6.4.2.2.

For the fixed tool case, the fixed tool tip traces the prescribed tool path specified in terms of local $0, \xi, \eta$-coordinate system, and a change in design variables $X_2$, $X_3$, and $X_4$ will vary the position of the fixed tool tip relative to revolute joint D.

Finally design variable $X_5$ indicates the relative distance between revolute joints D and E, so that for simulation purposes, the global positions of revolute joints C, D and E are given by expression (4.3):

$$(x, y)_C = (X_4, X_3), \quad (x, y)_D = ((X_4 + X_2), (X_1)) \quad \text{and} \quad (x, y)_E = ((X_4 + X_2 + X_3), (X_3)).$$

### D.2.2 Local coordinates

Given a prescribed tool path, as well as an operational geometry $X = [X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4, X_5]^T$, the physical motion of the test-model platform may be simulated to find the overall maximum magnitudes along the path of the individual actuator forces $f_k$, $k = 1, 2, 3$. This objective function (expression (4.4)) is formally defined in Section 4.2.2.

In evaluating the objective function (see Section 4.3.1), the inverse kinematic analysis of the test-model requires that the global coordinates of revolute joints C, D and E, as well as the local coordinates $\xi^A$, 

---

*Appendix D*
The coordinates of joints C, D and E are given by substituting the specific values of the relevant design variables into expression (4.3) (see also the last paragraph of Section D.2.1). The value of design variable $X_i$ fixes the values of local coordinates $\xi_i^A$ and $\xi_i^B$ as explained in the second paragraph of Section D.2.1.

Corresponding to Section 2.3, the origin of each local $\xi_i\eta_i$-coordinate system, $i=1,2,...,7$ is chosen to coincide with the center of mass of respective bodies 1,2,...,7. Using the known dimensions and densities of the components that make up each individual body of the test-model, the positions of each body's center of mass may be calculated. With reference to Figure D.2, the following local coordinates of the test-model are fixed:

$$
\begin{align*}
\xi_1^A &= 0.1904 \text{ m} \\
\xi_1^B &= 0.2921 \text{ m} \\
\xi_3^A &= 0.1751 \text{ m} \\
\xi_3^B &= 0.050 \text{ m} \\
\xi_5^A &= 0.050 \text{ m} \\
\xi_5^B &= 0.050 \text{ m}
\end{align*}
$$

The evaluation of the objective function, furthermore involves solving the inverse dynamic equations of motion (expression (2.124)) for the unknown LaGrange multipliers and actuator forces $f$ (see Section 4.3.1).

### D.2.3 Gravitational and frictional external forces

The specific entries of the constant diagonal mass matrix $M$ in expression (2.124) consist of the specific masses and moments of inertia of the individual bodies of the test-model (see Chapter 5), and may also be determined using the known dimensions and densities of the parts constituting each body. With reference to the eight numbered bodies of Figure D.2, the entries of the mass matrix $M$ are

$$M = \text{diag}(M_1^T, M_2^T, ..., M_8^T)$$

with

$$
\begin{align*}
M_1 &= \begin{bmatrix} 2.1246 & 2.1246 & 0.0829 \end{bmatrix}^T \\
M_2 &= \begin{bmatrix} 0.7671 & 0.7671 & 0.0355 \end{bmatrix}^T \\
M_3 &= \begin{bmatrix} 0.5696 & 0.5696 & 0.0263 \end{bmatrix}^T \\
M_4 &= \begin{bmatrix} 0.8341 & 0.8341 & 0.0377 \end{bmatrix}^T \\
M_5 &= M_6 = M_7 = \begin{bmatrix} 3.0725 & 3.0725 & 6.17 \times 10^{-1} \end{bmatrix}^T \\
M_8 &= \begin{bmatrix} 0, 0, 0 \end{bmatrix}^T
\end{align*}
$$

and specified in SI units.
The vector of known external forces $\mathbf{g}^{(k)}$ in expression (2.124) consists of the cutting force $\mathbf{g}^{\text{cutting}}$ acting on the moving platform (body 1) and the weights of individual bodies comprising the planar Gough-Stewart platform $\mathbf{g}^{\text{gravity}}$, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, 7$ (see expression (2.124)).

With the masses of the individual bodies of the platform test-model known (see Chapter 5), their respective weights follow from expression (2.104), i.e.:

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathbf{g}^{\text{gravity}}_1 &= [0, -20.842 \text{ N}, 0]^T \\
\mathbf{g}^{\text{gravity}}_2 &= [0, -7.526 \text{ N}, 0]^T \\
\mathbf{g}^{\text{gravity}}_3 &= [0, -5.588 \text{ N}, 0]^T \\
\mathbf{g}^{\text{gravity}}_4 &= [0, -8.182 \text{ N}, 0]^T \\
\mathbf{g}^{\text{gravity}}_5 &= \mathbf{g}^{\text{gravity}}_6 = \mathbf{g}^{\text{gravity}}_7 = [0, -30.141 \text{ N}, 0]^T
\end{align*}
$$

The platform test-model represents a special case of the fixed work-piece scenario, with a zero tool length $\eta_1 = 0$ (see Section 2.4.1). This is because the pen, used for demonstration purposes, is mounted on the moving platform (body 1) at local coordinates $(\zeta, \eta)_1 = (0, 0)$.

The cutting force $\mathbf{g}^{\text{cutting}}_1$ of the fixed workpiece case is described in Section 2.6.4.2.1. Note that the cutting force is modeled as a friction force, the magnitude of which is linearly dependent on the magnitude of the cutting velocity (see expression (2.107)). The moving platform of the test-model experiences frictional forces, not only as a result of the pen tracing the prescribed tool path on the Perspex side panel, but also because of the spring loaded lateral stiffeners (see Chapter 5) sliding against the Perspex side panels during the motion of the moving platform.

The magnitude of the resultant frictional force may be measured by means of a simple experiment using a spring balance. In particular, the moving platform is disconnected from the three actuator legs, and hung unto a string. The experiment is executed by connecting the moving platform to the spring balance, and pulling the moving platform in a horizontal direction while the pen and spring loaded lateral stiffeners slide against the Perspex side panels. While moving at a constant speed along a known distance, the “constant speed motion” time and spring balance reading are measured.

Since the string supporting the moving platform is very long (1.38 m) compared to the horizontal motion (80 mm) of the moving platform, the vertical displacement of the moving platform may be neglected, hence the reading on the spring balance approximately equals the resultant frictional force.

\textit{Appendix D}
Figure D.3: The experimental setup for measuring the frictional force using a spring balance.

Figure D.3 shows a photograph of the experimental setup used to measure the resultant frictional force on the moving platform using the spring balance. Table D.1 lists the readings that were obtained, as well as the calculation of the average cutting force constant, \( C_{cut} \). The reasonable assumption is made here that the friction forces acting on the moving platform may be merged and simulated as a single cutting force (see Section 2.6.4.2.1). In order to determine the average cutting force constant, \( C_{cut} \) used in expression (2.107), the experimental constant speed translations listed in Table D.1 were also measured and timed to yield the magnitudes of the constant speeds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spring balance reading No.</th>
<th>Resultant friction force [N]</th>
<th>Distance [mm]</th>
<th>Time [s]</th>
<th>Constant speed [m/s]</th>
<th>( C_{cut} ) [Ns/m]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>7.85</td>
<td>80 mm</td>
<td>3.74</td>
<td>0.02139</td>
<td>366.894</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>9.81</td>
<td>80 mm</td>
<td>1.54</td>
<td>0.05195</td>
<td>188.843</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>11.28</td>
<td>80 mm</td>
<td>1.13</td>
<td>0.07080</td>
<td>159.351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8.34</td>
<td>80 mm</td>
<td>3.57</td>
<td>0.02241</td>
<td>372.106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>9.81</td>
<td>80 mm</td>
<td>1.23</td>
<td>0.06504</td>
<td>150.829</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>80 mm</td>
<td>1.39</td>
<td>0.05755</td>
<td>178.971</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>11.77</td>
<td>80 mm</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.10390</td>
<td>113.306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>8.34</td>
<td>80 mm</td>
<td>3.17</td>
<td>0.02524</td>
<td>330.413</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Appendix D
Table D.1: Experimental readings in determining the average “cutting force constant”.

<p>| | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>9.81</td>
<td>80 mm</td>
<td>1.42</td>
<td>0.056338</td>
<td>174.128</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>11.28</td>
<td>80 mm</td>
<td>1.39</td>
<td>0.05755</td>
<td>196.016</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>10.79</td>
<td>80 mm</td>
<td>1.17</td>
<td>0.06838</td>
<td>157.818</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>7.85</td>
<td>80 mm</td>
<td>3.43</td>
<td>0.02332</td>
<td>336.483</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>8.83</td>
<td>80 mm</td>
<td>4.16</td>
<td>0.01923</td>
<td>459.108</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>19.81</td>
<td>80 mm</td>
<td>1.58</td>
<td>0.05063</td>
<td>193.748</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>8.34</td>
<td>80 mm</td>
<td>4.89</td>
<td>0.01636</td>
<td>509.691</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>9.81</td>
<td>80 mm</td>
<td>1.71</td>
<td>0.04678</td>
<td>209.689</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>11.28</td>
<td>80 mm</td>
<td>1.01</td>
<td>0.07921</td>
<td>142.429</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Average: 249.4

The average value for $C_{cut}$ as determined from the experimental measurements is 249.4. The specific value used in all for the simulations of the motion of the platform test-model, is 250.

**D.3 Specification of the physical operational constraints of the test-model**

In illustrating the optimization methodology, the configurational constraints (expressions (4.5) and (4.6)), relating to dimensional limitations of the individual components of the manipulator, were the only inequality constraints specified to ensure a feasible design for the hypothetical planar machining center. For the *real* test-model some of the physical limitations of the planar mechanism may also be incorporated in these configurational constraints, while others, specifically those relating to the prevention of *mechanical interference*, must be dealt with separately.

In this section, the latter constraints are first explained in general terms below, followed by a categorization of the test-model physical limitations, and an explanation of the necessary inequality constraints with which a feasible test-model design may be obtained.

**D.3.1 Inequality constraint specification for the prevention of mechanical interference**

In general the instantaneous perpendicular distance between a line in body $j$ and a point in body $i$ may easily be determined for the special case where the line is parallel to the $\xi$-axis of body $j$.

Consider for example Figure D.4 showing the schematic representation of bodies $i$ and $j$ experiencing planar motion.

---

*Appendix D*
It is assumed here that the following are known:

1. the instantaneous positions and orientations of respective bodies $i$, $q_i^I = [x_i, y_i, \phi_i]^T$, and $j$, $q_j^I = [x_j, y_j, \phi_j]^T$, as defined by expression (2.2).

2. the fixed local coordinates of point $P$ in body $i$, $(\xi_i, \eta_i^P)$, and

3. the fixed local $\eta$-coordinate of line QR in body $j$, $\eta_j^R$

Using the transformation given by expression (2.1), the instantaneous global $x$- and $y$ coordinates of point $P$ may be determined, i.e.,

$$
\begin{align*}
    x^P &= x_i + \xi_i \cos \phi_i - \eta_i \sin \phi_i \\
    y^P &= y_i + \xi_i \sin \phi_i + \eta_i \cos \phi_i
\end{align*}
$$

The instantaneous $\eta$-coordinate of point $P$ relative to the local coordinate system of body $j$, $\eta_j^P$, may also be determined using the inverse of the transformation given by expression (2.1), i.e.,

$$
\mathbf{s}_j^P = A_i^{-1} \mathbf{s}_j^I
$$

with $A_i^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \phi_i & \sin \phi_i \\ -\sin \phi_i & \cos \phi_i \end{bmatrix}$.

Substituting $\mathbf{s}_j^P = \mathbf{r}_j^P - \mathbf{r}_j$ (see expression (2.1)) into expression (D.4), yields
\[
\begin{bmatrix}
\xi^p \\
\eta^p
\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}
\cos \phi_j & \sin \phi_j \\
-\sin \phi_j & \cos \phi_j
\end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix}
x^p - x_j \\
y^p - y_j
\end{bmatrix}
\]

and therefore

\[\eta^p_j = (y^p - y_j) \cos \phi_j - (x^p - x_j) \sin \phi_j \quad \text{(D.5)}\]

Hence, the instantaneous perpendicular distance between line QR and point P is given by

\[\delta_{P-QR} = \eta^p_j - \eta^Q_j \quad \text{(D.6)}\]

Note that for the relative positioning of bodies \(i\) and \(j\) shown in Figure D.4, \(\delta_{P-QR}\) will become smaller as the two bodies move closer to each other. Hence, if the two bodies shown in Figure D.4 move relative to each other over a time interval \([0, T] = [0, T_{\text{time}}]\), the instantaneous perpendicular distance \(\delta_{P-QR}\) (expression (D.6)) may be monitored at discrete time instants \(t_j\) to find the overall minimum perpendicular distance, i.e. \(\delta_{P-QR}^{\text{min}} = \min_j[\delta_{P-QR}(t_j)]\) for \(t_j = j\Delta t; \quad j = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, M_{\text{time}}\); where \(M_{\text{time}} = \frac{T}{\Delta t}\) and \(\Delta t\) is a suitably small chosen monitoring time interval.

The alternative relative positioning of bodies \(i\) and \(j\) is shown in Figure D.5. Here the instantaneous perpendicular distance \(\delta_{P-QR}\) (expression (D.6)) becomes larger as the two bodies move closer to each other. Hence, if the two bodies shown in Figure D.5 move relative to each other over a time interval \([0, T] = [0, T_{\text{time}}]\), the instantaneous perpendicular distance \(\delta_{P-QR}\) (expression (D.6)) may be monitored at discrete time instants \(t_j\) to find the overall maximum perpendicular distance, i.e. \(\delta_{P-QR}^{\text{max}} = \max_j[\delta_{P-QR}(t_j)]\) for \(t_j\) as defined above.
Figure D.5: Schematic representation of bodies $i$ and $j$ experiencing planar motion (alternative relative positioning of the two bodies).

With the judicious selection of point $P$ on body $i$, and points $Q$ and $R$ on body $j$, mechanical interference between bodies $i$ and $j$ may be prohibited for both situations as depicted in Figure D.4 and Figure D.5 respectively: Firstly, an allowable perpendicular distance $|\delta_{P-QR}^{\text{allow}}|$ is chosen. Secondly, one of the following two inequality constraints is specified:

$$|\delta_{P-QR}^{\text{allow}}| \leq \delta_{P-QR}^{\text{max}}$$  \hspace{1cm} (D.7)

or

$$\delta_{P-QR}^{\text{max}} \leq |\delta_{P-QR}^{\text{allow}}|$$  \hspace{1cm} (D.8)

Inequality constraint (D.7) is used for the relative positioning of bodies $i$ and $j$ as shown in Figure D.4, while inequality constraint (D.8) is used for the relative positioning of bodies $i$ and $j$ as shown in Figure D.5.

### D.3.2 Linearly adjustable revolute joints

The configurational constraints limiting the allowable relative distances between the linearly adjustable revolute joints of the fixed base ($X_2$ and $X_3$) and the moving platform ($X_1$) (see expression (4.5)) are directly applicable on the physical test-model. With reverence to Figure D.6 showing the adjustable capability of the test-model, the specific bounds (given in meters) on design variables $X_1$, $X_2$ and $X_3$ are...
0.1 ≤ X₁ ≤ 0.45
0.113 ≤ X₂ ≤ 0.465
0.113 ≤ X₅ ≤ 0.27

(D.9)

Figure D.6: Adjustable capability of the test-model.

The lower and upper bounds specified in expression (D.9) correspond exactly to the lower and upper bounds that were specified for the optimization test run of the hypothetical planar machining center (see expression (4.14)). Hence, in agreement with the inequality constraints given by expression (4.7), the first six inequality constraints used to ensure a feasible test-model design, are

\[
\begin{align*}
C_1(X) &= X_1 - 0.45 ≤ 0 \\
C_2(X) &= 0.1 - X_1 ≤ 0 \\
C_3(X) &= X_2 - 0.465 ≤ 0 \\
C_4(X) &= 0.113 - X_2 ≤ 0 \\
C_5(X) &= X_5 - 0.27 ≤ 0 \\
C_6(X) &= 0.113 - X_5 ≤ 0 
\end{align*}
\]

(D.10)

D.3.3 Extreme motion constraints

The extreme motion of the hypothetical moving platform is bounded by the allowable minimum and maximum actuator leg lengths (see expressions (4.6) and (4.8)). On the other hand, the motion of the physical moving platform is to be confined within the four frame boundaries represented by the four sides of rectangle FGHI as annotated in Figure D.7.
D.3.3.1 Upper frame boundary

The upper frame boundary (line HI) cannot be exceeded by the lateral stiffeners on the moving platform with specification that the allowable maximum actuator leg length $\bar{\ell}_k$ for all three actuator legs $k = 1, 2, 3$ is 0.525 m. Figure D.8 serves to illustrate this fact.
Test-model inequality constraints 7-9 are given by

\[ C_7(X) = \epsilon_1^{\text{max}}(X) - 0.525 \leq 0 \]
\[ C_8(X) = \epsilon_2^{\text{max}}(X) - 0.525 \leq 0 \] (D.11)
\[ C_9(X) = \epsilon_3^{\text{max}}(X) - 0.525 \leq 0 \]

where the overall maximum leg lengths for any prescribed path are given by \( \epsilon_k^{\text{max}}(X), k = 1,2,3 \) as explained in Section 4.3.2. These constraints (expression (4.8)) correspond exactly to the constraints \( C_{k+6}(X) = \epsilon_k^{\text{max}}(X) - 0.525 \leq 0, k = 1,2,3 \) specified for the optimization of the hypothetical platform see expression (4.8).

D.3.3.2 Lower frame boundary

The lower frame boundary of the test-model is represented by line FG in Figure D.7. Here it is important to prevent mechanical interference between the moving platform and the bottom frame cross members indicated by shaded regions a and b in Figure D.7. Line FG coincides with the top plane of the two bottom frame cross members.

With the moving platform in a horizontal orientation, the bottom ends of the adjustable brackets of revolute joints A and B are the lowest points on the moving platform (see Figure D.7). Due to the fact that the relative positions of the revolute joints may be adjusted, it is highly unlikely that the adjustable
brackets of revolute joints A and B will collide with the bottom frame cross members (shaded regions a and b), even with the moving platform in a horizontal orientation ($\phi_i = 0$). Furthermore, for a large enough CCW rotation of the moving platform, point J indicated in Figure D.7 is the lowest point on the moving platform. Similarly, for a large enough CW rotation of the moving platform, point K (see Figure D.7) is the lowest point on the moving platform.

The lower frame boundary is therefore treated here by monitoring the perpendicular distances between line FG on the frame, and respective points J and K on the moving platform following the methodology explained in Section D.3.1. In particular, assumptions 1 - 3 listed in Section D.3.1 are valid here, since the instantaneous position $(x_i, y_i)$ and orientation $\phi_i$ of the moving platform (body 1 in Figure D.2) are known as the prescribed path is traced (see expressions (2.27) - (2.29)). Furthermore, the global position $(x_y, y_y)$ and orientation $\phi_y$ of the frame (body 8 in Figure D.2) are fixed: $[x_y, y_y, \phi_y]^T = [0, 0, 0]^T$. The fixed local coordinates (in meters) of points J and K are $(\xi_j, \eta_j) = (-0.285, -0.004)$ and $(\xi_K, \eta_K) = (0.285, -0.004)$, and the fixed local $\eta$-coordinate of line FG is $\eta_{FG} = X_3 + 0.065$. Note that $X_j$ is the design variable representing the $y$-coordinate of the three base revolute joints C, D and E (see Figure D.2). Hence, the respective instantaneous perpendicular distances $\delta_{J-FG}(X, t_i)$ and $\delta_{K-FG}(X, t_i)$ may be determined at any time instant $t_i$, $i = 0, 1, 2, ..., N - 1$, $j = 0, 1, 2, ..., n_{time}$ (see Section 4.2.2) in accordance with expressions (D.3) - (D.6). The default value for $n_{time} = 10$ (see Appendix B).

Since the relative positioning of the moving platform with respect to the lower frame boundary conforms to the relative positioning of the bodies $i$ and $j$ as depicted in Figure D.4, the lower frame boundary inequality constraints formulated here correspond to the inequality (D.7):

$$C_{io}(X) = 0.006 - \delta_{io}^{\text{min}}(X) \leq 0 \quad (D.12)$$
$$C_{ii}(X) = 0.006 - \delta_{ii}^{\text{min}}(X) \leq 0$$

where $\delta_{io}^{\text{min}}(X) = \min_{i,j}[\delta_{J-FG}(X, t_i + t_j)]$, and $\delta_{ii}^{\text{min}}(X) = \min_{i,j}[\delta_{K-FG}(X, t_i + t_j)]$, and with $t_i$ and $t_j$ as defined above.

The same value of 0.006 m is used for both allowable perpendicular distances $\delta_{io}^{\text{allow}}$ and $\delta_{ii}^{\text{allow}}$ in expression (D.12). This value was chosen, so that the shortest attainable actuator leg length, without violating inequality constraints $C_{io}$ and $C_{ii}$ (expression (D.12)), is 0.075 m as shown in Figure D.9. This length is also the allowable minimum actuator leg length specified for the hypothetical platform in expression (4.15).

Appendix D 256
Since the shortest attainable actuator leg length corresponds exactly to the allowable minimum actuator leg length, inequality constraints $C_{k,9}(X) = \ell^m_k - \ell^m_k(X) \leq 0$, $k = 1,2,3$ (expression (4.8)) specified for the hypothetical platform are redundant in the optimization of the platform test-model.

**D.3.3.3 Left hand frame boundary**

The *left- and right hand frame boundaries* limit the horizontal movement of the physical moving platform. With the use of the spring loaded lateral stiffeners (see Chapter 5), point A is restricted to the right hand side of line FI, and point B is restricted to the left hand side of line GH (see Figure D.7).

Consider for the moment the left hand frame boundary. Point A is on the moving platform (body 1 in Figure D.2) at local coordinates $(\xi^A, \eta^A)_1 = \left( -\frac{X_1}{2}, 0 \right)$, and the global position and orientation of body 1 $[x, y, \phi_1]^T$ are known at each time instant as the prescribed path is traced. The global position of point A may therefore be determined in accordance with expression (D.3).

Line FI on the frame (body 8 in Figure D.2) is dealt with in a special manner. According to the definitions given in Section 2.3, the fixed body 8 is considered as the *ground* of the planar Gough-Stewart platform mechanism. Figure D.2 shows that the origin of body 8 is chosen to coincide with the origin of the global $0xy$-reference frame, $(x_s, y_s) = (0,0)$, and that the local $0_s \xi_s \eta_s$-coordinate system and the global $0xy$-reference frame are identically orientated, i.e. $\phi_s = 0$. This implies that the fixed
vertical line FI is parallel to the η-axis of body 8. However, the proposed collision prevention methodology explained in Section D.3.1 is based on the assumption that the line in body j is parallel to the ξ-axis of body j (see Figure D.4). The special treatment of line FI consists of the specification that body 8 is angled at 90°, i.e., \( \phi_8 = \frac{\pi}{2} \) rad, and is allowable, since each inequality constraint is treated separately and independent of the kinematic and kinetic analysis (Chapter 2).

The global x-coordinate of line FI is \( x^f_l = X_4 + X_2 - 0.6 \) (see Figure D.7), with \( X_4 \) and \( X_2 \) two of the five design variables describing the adjustable geometry of the planar Gough-Stewart platform machining center (see Figure 4.1). With the specification that \( [x_8, y_8, \phi_8]^T = [0, 0, \frac{\pi}{2}]^T \), the local η-coordinate of line FI may be determined using the transformation given by expression (D.4):

\[ \eta^f_l = -(X_4 + X_2 - 0.6). \]

The instantaneous perpendicular distance between point A on the moving platform and line FI on the frame \( \delta_{A-FI} \) may therefore be determined in accordance with expression (D.6). The relative positioning of the moving platform with respect to the left hand frame boundary agrees with the relative positioning of bodies \( i \) and \( j \) as depicted in Figure D.5. As a result of this, the instantaneous perpendicular distance \( \delta_{A-FI} \) becomes larger as the moving platform moves closer to the left hand frame boundary. The left hand frame boundary inequality constraint is therefore given by

\[ C_{12}(X) = \delta_{A-FI}^{\text{max}}(X) + 0.015 \leq 0 \]  \hspace{1cm} (D.13)

with \( \delta_{A-FI}^{\text{max}}(X) = \max_{i,j} [\delta_{A-FI}(X, t_i + t_j)] \) and \( t_i + t_j \) as defined in Section D.3.3.2. Since the radius of the spring loaded lateral stiffener is 15 mm, a value of 0.015 m is assigned to the allowable perpendicular distance \( |\delta_{A-FI}^{\text{allow}}| \) in the above expression. Note also that expression (D.13) corresponds to inequality (D.8) derived for the general situation depicted in Figure D.5.

D.3.3.4 Right hand frame boundary

The right hand frame boundary restricts point B on the moving platform to the left hand side of line GH in Figure D.7. Point B on the moving platform (body 1 in Figure D.2) is at local coordinates \( (\xi^n, \eta^n)_1 = \left( \frac{X_1}{2}, 0 \right) \) (see Section D.2.1). Line GH on the frame (body 8 in Figure 2.5) is treated here in a similar manner to line FI of the left hand frame boundary (see Section D.3.3.3) with the specification
that \([x_a, y_a, \phi_a]^T = \left[0, 0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]^T\). The global x-coordinate of line GH is \(x^G_H = X_4 + X_5 + 0.4\), from which the local \(\eta\)-coordinate, \(\eta^G_H = -(X_4 + X_5 + 0.4)\), may be determined (see expression (D.4)).

Note that since the perpendicular distance between line GH and point B becomes \textit{smaller} as the platform moves closer to the right hand frame boundary, the \textit{right hand frame boundary inequality constraint} is given by

\[
C_{15}(X) = 0.015 - \delta_{b-GH}^\min(X) \leq 0
\]  

(D.14)

with \(\delta_{b-GH}^\min(X) = \min_{i,j}[\delta_{b-GH}(X, t_i + t_j)]\), and \(\delta_{b-GH}(X, t_i + t_j)\) solved for in accordance with expression (D.6) at each time instant \(t_i + t_j\). Once again, an allowable perpendicular distance \(|\delta_{b-GH}^{allow}| = 0.015\) m is specified to compensate for the 15 mm radius of the spring loaded lateral stiffener (see \textbf{Chapter 5}).

\textbf{D.3.4 Revolute joint mechanical interference constraints}

There are no explicit constraints specified for the relative rotations about the revolute joints of the hypothetical platform. In practice however, the allowable rotations about the revolute joints of the physical test-model are limited as a result of mechanical interferences.

The design and assembly of the test-model is explained in detail in \textbf{Chapter 5}. Figure D.10 shows an annotated two-dimensional view of the planar Gough-Stewart platform test-model, where the different components involved in the revolute joint mechanical interferences are annotated.
Consider for the moment the fixed base platform assembly. In essence, and with reference to Figure D.10 each of the three revolute joints C, D and E is connected to a pair of *carrier blocks*, which are linearly adjustable along the *base tubular twin rails*. These base tubular twin rails are connected to the frame by means of *mounting brackets*. The base revolute joints C, D and E carry the actuator leg *drive units*, each consisting of a motor and gearbox assembly.

Varying the actuator leg lengths, not only causes the moving platform to change its position and orientation, but also causes the relative orientations of the actuator legs to vary. The relative orientations of the actuator legs and drive units correspond exactly, hence the potential danger exists of mechanical interference between the drive units and the different components of the fixed base frame.

**D.3.4.1 Revolute joint C mechanical interference constraints**

The relative position of revolute joint C on the base tubular twin rails is determined by design variable $X_2$ (see Section D.2.1). Depending on the magnitude of $X_2$, an excessively large CW rotation of
actuator leg 1 will cause the drive unit carried by revolute joint C to collide with either the left hand mounting brackets, or with the base tubular twin rails.

The proposed inequality constraint methodology for the prevention of mechanical interference (Section D.3.1) may however be applied here to formulate two separate inequality constraints with which both potential collisions may be avoided:

\[
C_{14}(X) = \delta_{M1-PQ}^\max(X) + 0.005 \leq 0 \tag{D.15}
\]

\[
C_{15}(X) = 0.005 - \delta_{L-M1M2}^\min(X) \leq 0 \tag{D.16}
\]

Figure D.11: Inequality constraint \(C_{14}\) (expression (D.15)) active.

Figure D.11 shows a scaled two-dimensional view of the test-model with \(X_2 = 0.360\, \text{m}\), where drive unit C is about to collide with the base twin tubular rails, but not with the mounting brackets. Note that the perpendicular distance between line PQ and point M1 is \(\delta_{M1-PQ} = 0.005\, \text{m}\), rendering inequality constraint \(C_{14}\) (expression (D.15)) active. In spite of this, the perpendicular distance between line M1M2 and point L is \(\delta_{L-M1M2} = 0.028\, \text{m}\), so that inequality constraint \(C_{15}\) (expression (D.16)) is not active.
The evaluation of inequality constraints $C_{i4}$ is summarized in Table D.2 below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General case analogy</th>
<th>Inequality constraint $C_{i4}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\delta_{p-QR}^{\max} \leq -</td>
<td>\delta_{p-QR}^{\text{low}}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure D.5

Assumption 1: (see Section D.3.1)

$[x, y, \phi]^T$ must be known

$[x, y, \phi]^T$ known from the inverse kinematic analysis (see Section 2.5)

Assumption 2: (see Section D.3.1)

$[x, y, \phi]^T$ must be known

$[x, y, \phi]^T = [0, 0, 0]^T$ fixed frame position and orientation (see Figure D.2)

Assumption 3: (see Section D.3.1)

$(\xi^p, \eta^p)$ must be known

$(\xi^{M1}, \eta^{M1}) = (-0.06439, 0.03)$ (see Figure D.13)

Table D.2: Evaluation of constraint $C_{i4}$ (expression (D.15)).

Figure D.12: Inequality constraint $C_{i5}$ (expression (D.16)) active.
On the other hand, Figure D.12 shows a scaled two-dimensional view of the test-model with \( X_2 = 0.465 \text{ m} \), where drive unit C is about to collide with the left hand mounting bracket, and not with the base twin tubular rails. As expected, the perpendicular distance between line PQ and point M1, is greater than 0.005 m (\( \delta_{M1-PQ} = 0.031 \text{ m} \)) so that inequality \( C_{14} \) (expression (D.15)) is not active, while \( \delta_{L-MIM2} = 0.005 \text{ m} \), so that inequality \( C_{15} \) (expression (D.16)) becomes active.

The evaluation of inequality constraint \( C_{15} \) are summarized in Table D.3 below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General case analogy</th>
<th>Inequality constraint ( C_{15} )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \delta_{P-QR}^{\text{allow}} \leq \delta_{P-QR}^{\text{min}} ) (expression (D.7))</td>
<td>( C_{15}(X) = 0.005 - \delta_{L-MIM2}^{\text{min}}(X) \leq 0 ) (expression (D.16))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure D.4</td>
<td>Figure D.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assumption 1: (see Section D.3.1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>([x,y,\phi]) must be known</td>
<td>([x,y,\phi]) = ([0,0,0])^T fixed frame position and orientation (see Figure D.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assumption 2: (see Section D.3.1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>((\xi^p,\eta^p)) must be known</td>
<td>((\xi^L,\eta^L)_8 = ((X_4 + X_2 - 0.555),(X_3 - 0.025)))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assumption 3: (see Section D.3.1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\eta_i^{QR}) must be known</td>
<td>(\eta_i^{MIM2} = 0.03) (see Figure D.13)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table D.3: Evaluation of constraint \( C_{15} \) (expression (D.16)).**

![Figure D.13: Local coordinates on drive unit C.](image)

**Appendix D**
**D.3.4.2 Revolute joint D mechanical interference constraints**

The relative position of revolute joint D on the base twin tubular rails is fixed (see Section D.2.1). However, the adjustable relative position of revolute joint E, given by the magnitude of design variable $X_s$, influences whether drive unit D will collide with the base twin tubular rails, or with the carrier blocks of revolute joint E. These potential collisions will of course only occur for excessively large CCW rotations of actuator leg 2. A third possible collision may occur between actuator leg 2 and drive unit E, depending on the value of $X_s$, as well as the relative orientations of actuator legs 2 and 3.

In order to prevent all three potential collisions from happening, three inequality constraints are formulated (refer to the annotations in Figure D.10 and Figure D.14 respectively):

\[
C_{16}(X) = \delta_{R_{1}PQ}^{\text{max}}(X) + 0.005 \leq 0 \quad \text{(D.17)}
\]

\[
C_{17}(X) = \delta_{R_{5}R_{1}R_{2}}^{\text{max}}(X) + 0.005 \leq 0 \quad \text{(D.18)}
\]

\[
C_{18}(X) = \delta_{R_{5}R_{3}R_{4}}^{\text{max}}(X) + 0.005 \leq 0 \quad \text{(D.19)}
\]

![Figure D.14: Local coordinates on drive unit D.](image)

**D.3.4.3 Revolute joint E mechanical interference constraints**

As previously stated in Sections D.2.1 and D.3.4.2, the magnitude of design variable $X_s$ determines the relative position of revolute joint E on the base twin tubular rails. For an extreme CCW orientation of actuator leg 3, and depending on the magnitude of design variable $X_s$, drive unit E will collide either with the base twin tubular rails, or with the right hand mounting bracket. There also exists the possibility of mechanical interference between actuator leg 3 and drive unit D, depending on the magnitude of design variable $X_s$, and the relative orientations of actuator legs 2 and 3.
Following the same recipe as before, three inequality constraint equations are formulated to prevent the above mentioned potential collisions from happening (refer to the annotations in Figure D.10 and Figure D.15 respectively):

\[
C_{19}(X) = \delta_{V1-PQ}^{\text{max}}(X) + 0.005 \leq 0 \quad (D.20)
\]

\[
C_{20}(X) = \delta_{W-VV2}^{\text{max}}(X) + 0.005 \leq 0 \quad (D.21)
\]

\[
C_{21}(X) = 0.005 - \delta_{R5-T3T4}^{\text{min}}(X) \leq 0 \quad (D.22)
\]

**Figure D.15: Local coordinates on drive unit E.**

**D.3.4.4 Revolute joint A mechanical interference**

Depending on the relative orientation of the moving platform (body 1 in Figure D.2) and actuator leg 1 (body 2 in Figure D.2), point J1 on the moving platform left hand bracket may collide with actuator leg 1. In order to avoid such a collision from happening, the following inequality constraint is formulated (see Figure D.16):

\[
C_{22}(X) = 0.005 - \delta_{J1-M1M4}^{\text{min}}(X) \leq 0 \quad (D.23)
\]
Figure D.16: Inequality constraint $C_{22}$ (expression (D.23)) active.
REFERENCES


REFERENCES


